Oracle® Applications

Oracle Applications Upgrade Manual

Release 11, UNIX Edition

April 1998
Part No. A57982-01

ORACLE®
Enabling the Information Age™

Oracle Applications Upgrade Manual, Release 11 (as a variable) UNIX Edition (as a variable)

Part No. A57982-01

Release 11

Contents

2   Oracle Application Object Library

3   Oracle Alert

4   Oracle Assets

5   Oracle Bills of Material

6   Oracle Cash Management

7   Oracle Common Modules

8   Oracle Cost Management

9   Oracle EDI Gateway

10   Oracle Financials for Europe

11 Oracle Financials for Latin America

12 Oracle FlexBuilder

13 Oracle GL or Oracle Public Sector GL

14 Global Accounting Engine

15   Oracle Human Resources

16   Oracle Inventory

17   Oracle Order Entry/Shipping

18   Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables

19 Oracle Projects

20   Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing

21   Oracle Quality

22 Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables

23 Oracle Sales and Marketing

24 Oracle Self-Service Web Applications

25 Oracle Service

Preface

This manual provides the information that you need to prepare your Oracle Applications products for a software upgrade. It also tells you how to finish the upgrade for your products after you run AutoInstall. Use this manual along with *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition* (Release 11) to upgrade Oracle Applications.

EMM Advantage

This is the first Oracle Applications release that offers a new methodology for upgrading Oracle Applications—EasiPath Migration Method (EMM Advantage). Produced by Oracle Corporation, EMM Advantage is now available to help you structure and manage your Oracle Applications upgrade project.

A comprehensive toolkit for migrating Oracle Applications products, EMM Advantage is a tested framework for quality migrations. It includes the Oracle EasiPath Migration Method (EMM), a proven, structured approach used successfully worldwide by Oracle consultants, and Project Management Method (PJM), a standardized Oracle approach to project management.

The EMM Advantage toolkit, in combination with your skills, experience, and business knowledge, will ensure a higher-quality migration and lead you to business results faster. It is available from the Oracle Direct Marketing group in your country, or you can contact your local Oracle Sales Representative.

Intended Audience

This manual is written for the persons who are responsible for upgrading Oracle Applications. In it, we assign upgrade steps to the following roles. You will note

that the role names and descriptions have been redefined to bring them in line with the goals of the new Oracle upgrade methodology—EMM Advantage.

Application Specialist

Provides knowledge and guidance regarding application functionality. This person also supports and provides interpretation for tools, templates, and methods.

Database Administrator

Installs and configures the Oracle database and maintains database access controls. This person provides consultation on performance, and is responsible for monitoring growth and fragmentation of the production database and ensuring database backup and recovery.

System Administrator

Responsible for administering the development system. This person's responsibilities include:

- Ensuring that hardware is correctly configured

- Installing, configuring, and maintaining operating and development software

- Ensuring that the system is backed up daily

- Designing and maintaining system security—for example, establishing system accounts.

The system administrator provides first-line support for problems with the development system and ensures that faults are quickly rectified. This person may perform the setup and initial maintenance of the production system or advise the client's operational staff on these tasks. The system administrator works with the project team to optimize system performance. They also install packaged applications environments and convert data.

Technical Specialist

Responsible for designing, developing, unit testing, implementing, and maintaining the custom extensions for the Oracle applications. These extensions include, but are not limited to, modules—such as interfaces, automated data conversions, reports, forms, and enhancements.

IS Manager

Directs the client information systems organization within a business. The IS manager acts as a business line manager for the staff in the IS organization. This

person is responsible for the technical infrastructure of a business, including decisions about purchases, in-house development, and operational maintenance and support. The following information system staff report directly or indirectly to the IS manager:

- application and technical architect

- technical analyst

- designer

- technical (database, network, system) administrator

- operations staff

- support staff

The IS manager defines the information systems strategy for a corporation and puts the strategy into practice through standards, policies, practices, and information systems selection processes.

How to Use This Manual

Each chapter in this manual explains the installation upgrade steps for an individual Oracle Applications product.

Chapter 1	Describes upgrade steps for Oracle System Administration. These steps must be completed regardless of which products you have installed or plan to install.
Chapter 2	Describes upgrade steps for the Application Object Library. Complete these steps for any products that you have customized.
Chapters 3–27	Arranged alphabetically by product, these chapters describe the pre- and post-upgrade steps required for each Oracle Applications product. You will apply these steps for those products that you are upgrading from an earlier release. (See the table in the Usernames and Passwords section of this Preface for a list of products included in this manual.)
Index	An alphabetical listing of references to topics in this manual. A product code in each entry indicates the product where you will perform the indexed step. For example, *parameters, verifying (WIP)* points to a step in the Oracle Work in Process chapter.

Chapters in this manual may be divided into as many as three main sections. If one of the sections does not apply, it will be omitted from the product chapter.

- Overview

  Identifies the significant issues that you should consider when upgrading, implementing, and using a product. It discusses important implementation decisions that you need to make and points out upgrade steps that may require significant time to carry out.

- Preparing to Upgrade

  Lists the steps that prepare an individual product for an upgrade. You perform these steps *before* you run AutoInstall to upgrade your products.

- After the Upgrade

  Lists the steps that finish the upgrade procedure for an individual product. You perform these steps *after* you run AutoInstall.

  > **Attention:** Commercial and government versions of products, such as Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Public Sector General Ledger, are covered in the same chapter. All information in the chapter applies to both the commercial and the public sector versions unless noted otherwise.

Usernames and Passwords

You need Oracle Applications usernames and passwords when running the upgrade steps. This manual uses product abbreviations enclosed in angle brackets (< >) to indicate when you must supply the product's username and password. For example, the notation <GL username>/<GL password> means you must supply the Oracle General Ledger username and password combination By default, and unless noted, the schema name and password are the same as the application abbreviation.

The following table lists the abbreviations for Oracle Applications products. It also lists whether the product installs into multiple ORACLE schemas if the old Multiple Sets of Books Architecture was implemented. As a consequence, some upgrade steps may need to be performed multiple times, once for each install.

Abbreviation	Product Name	Multiple Installs
AK	Oracle Common Modules	No
ALR	Oracle Alert	No

Abbreviation	Product Name	Multiple Installs
AOL (default=APPLSYS)	Application Object Library	No
AP	Oracle Accounts Payable	Yes
APPLSYSPVB	Applications public schema	No
APPS	APPS universal schema	Yes
AR	Oracle Accounts Receivable	Yes
AS	Oracle Sales and Marketing	Yes
AX	Global Accounting Engine	No
AZ	Application Implementation	No
BOM	Oracle Bills of Material	Yes
CE	Oracle Cash Management	Yes
CHV*	Oracle Supplier Scheduling	Yes
CN*	Oracle Sales Compensation	Yes
CRP*	Oracle Capacity	Yes
CS	Oracle Service	Yes
CST	Oracle Cost Management	Yes
CZ*	Oracle Product Configurator	Yes
EC	Oracle EDI Gateway	Yes
ENG*	Oracle Engineering	Yes
FA	Oracle Assets	No
FLM	Flow Manufacturing	Yes
FND	Oracle System Administration	No
GL	Oracle General Ledger	No
HR	Oracle Human Resources	No
ICX	Oracle Self-Service Web Applications	No
INV	Oracle Inventory	Yes
JA*	Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific	Yes
JE	Oracle Financials for Europe	Yes
JG	Oracle Regional Financials	Yes

Abbreviation	Product Name	Multiple Installs
JL	Oracle Financials for Latin America	Yes
MRP*	Oracle Master Scheduling and Supply Chain Planning	Yes
OE	Oracle Order Entry/Shipping	Yes
OTA	Oracle Human Resources (Training)	No
PA	Oracle Projects	Yes
PAY (default=HR)	Oracle Human Resources (Payroll)	No
PER (default=HR)	Oracle Human Resources (Personnel)	No
PJM	Project Manufacturing	Yes
PO	Oracle Purchasing	Yes
QA	Oracle Quality	No
SSP	Oracle Statutory Sick Pay	No
SYS	ORACLE SYS schema	N/A
SYSTEM	ORACLE SYSTEM schema	N/A
VEH*	Oracle Automotive	No
WIP	Oracle Work in Process	Yes

*These products do not have upgrade steps and are not represented by a chapter in this manual.

The Upgrade Process

The first step in the upgrade process is to plan your upgrade. The overview in each chapter will help you. You will also want to have available the user's guide and implementation manual for the new release of each of your products so that you can learn about new features.

The next step is to prepare your products for the upgrade. The Preparing to Upgrade section in each chapter contains steps that make a product ready to upgrade. You can prepare your products in any order. After you complete the Preparing to Upgrade steps, you run AutoInstall to perform the actual upgrade.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition*

After you run AutoInstall, you perform the steps that are necessary to finish the upgrade process for a product. The After the Upgrade section in each chapter lists these steps. You will need your Release 11 product user's guides and implementation manuals to complete these steps.

> **Attention:** You must perform the upgrade preparation and finishing steps for Oracle System Administration regardless of the products you are upgrading. If you have created customized applications, you must also perform the upgrade preparation and finishing steps for Oracle Application Object Library.

> **Suggestion:** Read the upgrade steps for all your products before you begin the upgrade process. This will help you determine the most efficient way to prepare for and finish the upgrade process for your unique combination of products.

Important Considerations

Before you begin, you should pay special attention to several aspects of the upgrade process. They are listed in this section.

Batch Commit Sizes

When you start AutoInstall, it prompts you to enter a batch commit size to be used during the upgrade. If you do not specify a value, AutoInstall uses a default batch commit size, which is set to a relatively small value to accommodate systems with small rollback segments.

Batch commit size determines the number of rows to commit at one time when certain scripts run. To take advangate of large rollback segments, you must specify a batch commit size larger than the default value.

Multiple Reporting Currencies

If you are planning to use Multiple Reporting Currencies in Release 11, you should read *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for more information about implementing and using this feature.

Multiple Sets of Books Architecture

Prior to Multi-Org (introduced in Release 10.6 of Oracle Applications), you had to use a multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA) in order to utilize multiple sets of books functionality.

Each chapter in this manual indicates how a product installs under multiple sets of books architecture. For a multiple ORACLE schema application (MOA), the product is installed multiple times. For a single ORACLE schema application (SOA), the product is installed only once. If you are using the multiple set of books feature in a MSOBA product, you *must* complete each upgrade step individually for each set of books that has been set up in the organization.

Release 10.7 NCA

Throughout this book, you will see references to Release 10.7 NCA and to Release 10 SmartClient (10SC) Production 16.1. Please note that these two releases are interchangeable at the database level.

Upgrade Checklists

The checklist at the beginning of each Preparing to Upgrade and After the Upgrade section lists the steps for that phase of the upgrade. Here is an example:

Oracle Inventory		
Steps		**Performed by**
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.		
❏	1. Find and Correct Items with no Primary Unit of Measure	Database Administrator
❏	2. Purge Unwanted Transaction History (Recommended)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Inventory.		
❏	3. Process All Data in Temporary and Interface Tables	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)

The example indicates that there are three steps—two are Category 2 steps and one is a Category 3 steps. The Performed by column indicates the person who is responsible for completing the steps. In chapters that discuss inter-related products,

this column may indicate the *product* where you perform this step instead of the person who performs it.

Step Summary Lines

Each step listed in the Preparing to Upgrade sections begins with a heading that gives the step number and step title. Below this are summary lines that indicate which release this step applies to, who performs the step, whether you need a user's guide to carry out the instructions, and whether users must log off the product while the step is being performed. For example:

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payroll)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Payroll User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Each step in the After the Upgrade sections has similar summary lines that indicates the following information:

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Capacity Technical Reference Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

In addition, the step summary lines for some products *may* contain other information that is unique to that product. For example:

Perform for this country: **Brazil**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Note that if you are upgrading from 10.5SC, 10.6SC, 10.7SC, or 10.7NCA, you must perform the steps only for the corresponding release level—10.5, 10.6, or 10.7, respectively. For example, if you are upgrading from Release 10.7SC, you must perform any steps that apply to either Release 10.7SC or Release 10.7.

Upgrade Preparation Steps

The upgrade preparation steps describe how to prepare the products for the database structure of the new release. If you have not prepared products correctly, AutoInstall may not be able to upgrade them. During an upgrade, AutoInstall

upgrades all Oracle Applications products. You cannot use AutoInstall to upgrade products selectively. You must successfully run AutoInstall before you perform the upgrade finishing steps for all upgraded products.

To help you run an efficient upgrade that minimizes the time your products are unavailable for use, we have divided the upgrade preparation steps and the upgrade finishing steps into several categories. In addition, we have noted whether the step is required, conditionally required, or recommended.

Required	All steps are required unless noted otherwise. This means that if a step has no parenthetical notation, it is required for a successful upgrade.
Conditionally required	Read this step and decide whether it applies to your upgrade: for example, a step that is required for a specific feature or configuration.
Recommended	An optional step. However, you should read it, understand it, and decide whether it is in your best interest to perform it. For example, if running a step will substantially reduce the time it takes to run an upgrade script, we "recommend" that you run the step.

Category 1: Steps To Perform Before Receiving the New Software

These steps require nothing from the new software release and do not prevent you from continuing to use the product. We recommend that you perform these steps as soon as possible. You will need only this manual and your Oracle Applications Release 11 user's guides as reference.

Category 2: Steps that Require the New Software

These steps require files from your new Oracle Applications software. You can continue to use your products with the existing release after you run these steps. We recommend that you perform these steps soon after you receive your new software. You must unload the new installation directory.

> **Additional Information:**   Unload AutoInstall Files *(Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition)*

Category 3: Steps to Perform Just Before Running AutoInstall

Once you begin these steps, you cannot use the product until the upgrade is complete. Run these steps just before you run AutoInstall, after all users have logged off.

The Prepare for Upgrade section of *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition* gives a step-by-step account of tasks to perform before running AutoInstall. Refer to that manual for instructions on the appropriate time to run Category 3 steps.

Once you have completed the steps in this section, you are ready to run AutoInstall to install the new release of Oracle Applications.

Upgrade Finishing Steps

You perform the upgrade finishing steps after you have run AutoInstall. When performing upgrade finishing steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, you can run each from $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out instead of $APPL_TOP/admin/out so the ouput from each does not overwrite others.

Category 4: Steps to Run Before Using Oracle Applications

These steps affect the entire Oracle Applications system and should be completed before any user attempts to use any Oracle Applications product.

> **Attention:** Perform the steps for Oracle System Administration, and if necessary Application Object Library, first.

Category 5: Steps to Run Before Using the Application

These steps affect a specific Oracle Applications product. Users cannot use a product until the steps in this category are completed.

Category 6: Steps to Run Before Using a Certain Feature

Users can sign on to an Oracle Applications product but cannot use certain features until you perform these steps. The summary box for each step indicates which feature or features the step prepares for use.

> **Additional Information:** Step Summary Lines in this Preface.

> **Attention:** The upgrade finishing steps typically point out new features that you may want to implement. After you finish the steps, however, review the product implementation manuals thoroughly to ensure that you have completely implemented the new features you plan to use.

Finishing Steps Performed after Upgrade is Validated

Some steps can only be performed after all Category 4, 5, and 6 steps have been successfully completed and after you have validated that the entire upgrade was successful.

> **Additional Information:** Chapter 1 in this manual

Warnings

Pay close attention to all warnings that discuss when and where you run upgrade steps. Carefully coordinating your upgrade preparation work across the different products will avoid errors.

> **Attention:** Failure to complete the upgrade preparation and upgrade finishing steps correctly can adversely affect your upgrade.

Shared Products

You typically perform upgrade steps only for the products you have fully installed. However, you may need to perform upgrade steps for some products if they are installed as shared (dependent) products.

We strongly recommend that you read the entire chapter for each product you have installed as shared. There may be other shared product steps you need to perform depending on your system implementation.

Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products

You must perform the upgrade steps for every installed product regardless of which products you actually use. For example, if you have Oracle Human Resources (Oracle Personnel) fully installed but only partially implemented, you must still perform the Oracle Human Resources upgrade preparation steps.

Beginning with Release 10.6 of Oracle Applications, all products are installed in the database. Therefore, some steps, like dropping obsolete objects after the upgrade is complete, must be performed for all products.

> **Additional Information:** Chapter 1, "Oracle System Administration"

Related Documents

All Release 11 documentation is included on the *Oracle Applications Document Library* CD, which is supplied with the *Oracle Applications Product* CD. You can purchase additional sets of printed documentation for Oracle software products from the Oracle Documentation Sales department (http://www.us.oracle.com/documentation/sales). Specific documentation that you may need in addition to this manual includes the following:

- *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition*
- *Oracle Applications Concepts, UNIX Edition*
- *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*
- *Oracle Self Service Web Applications Implementation Manual*
- *Oracle Workflow Guide*
- product-specific implementation manuals
- product-specific user's guides

Conventions

We recommend that you review the following conventions used in this manual before installing or upgrading an Oracle Applications system.

Convention	Meaning
Monospace text	Represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< >	Text enclosed in angle brackets represents a variable. Substitute an appropriate value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.
[ ]	Square brackets enclose optional items or indicate a function key. Do not type the brackets.
|	A vertical bar represents an "or" option among several options. You must enter only one of the options. Do not type the vertical bar.
/directory	A slash before a directory name indicates that it is a subdirectory. The path name may be either uppercase or lowercase.
$	Represents the UNIX Edition command prompt. Your prompt may differ.
\	In examples of commands you type online, a backward slash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. Do not type the backslash.

Special notes alert you to particular information within the body of the manual.

Additional Information:	Refers you to portions of this manual, another manual, or the online documentation. All references to other manuals refer to the most recent version of that manual, unless otherwise noted.
Attention:	Alerts you to important information that will help you use the system.
Note:	Highlights helpful hints and practical tips that can save time and make installation or other procedures easier.
Warning:	Warns of actions which, if not carried out properly, could be damaging or destructive to your operations.

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Applications Upgrade Manual

Release 11, UNIX Edition

Part No. A57982-01

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this publication. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most about this manual?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- FAX - 650-506-7292.   Attn: [Oracle Product Name]
- postal service:
  Oracle Corporation
  Oracle [Product Name] Documentation
  Street Address, M/S 3op4
  Redwood Shores, CA 94065
  U.S.A.

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, and telephone number in the space below.

1

Oracle System Administration

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle System Administration (SYSADMIN) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle System Administration with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle System Administration may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

Overview

This chapter includes steps that affect all Oracle Applications, and therefore fall under the responsibility of your system administrator. You should perform the steps in this chapter before you begin to upgrade an individual Oracle Applications product. This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle System Administration.

In addition to the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade steps, there are also some important steps that you should complete only *after* you have completed and verified your upgrade. These steps accomplish "clean-up" tasks such as dropping unneeded database objects and the like. We list these task under an additional heading called After You Verify Your Upgrade, which appears as the last section in this chapter. Note also that some of these steps must be performed for all Applications, not just those that are licensed installed or shared since all database components are installed and upgraded together.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle System Administration are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts

you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Document Your Customizations

The System Administration upgrade preparation emphasizes the protection of customizations you have previously made to your Oracle Applications.The pre-upgrade steps provide ways to protect or document customizations, whether by modification or extension. Customizations made by modifying Applications data—changing the specializations of a concurrent manager or modifying an Oracle Applications value set—may be overwritten by AutoInstall during an upgrade. Customizations made by extending Oracle Applications data—defining new concurrent managers or custom responsibilities—do not change.

If you create extensions such as new responsibilities with custom menus, your work is preserved during the upgrade. However, if your custom extension has the same name as a new Oracle component, AutoInstall may change or rename it. The pre-upgrade steps discuss naming conventions used by AutoInstall for custom components such as menus and responsibilities so that you can be sure that you have created a unique name for your extensions.

Customizations to character-mode data, such as SQL*Forms 2.3 menus and the responsibilities that use those menus will not be migrated during the upgrade.

When AutoInstall runs DataMerge on table data, DataMerge uses a specified column (or set of columns) to uniquely identify the row. DataMerge merges the row according to the value of the specified column and the value of the WHO columns (which determine whether Oracle seeded the row or updated it).

If a row you added in the database conflicts with one defined by Oracle to be inserted in the database, then your row is moved out of the way by adding an @ symbol as a prefix to the value of the specified identifying column (if the column is VARCHAR2) or by bumping the ID to greater than 1 million (if the column is not VARCHAR2) before the row that Oracle has defined is inserted. We keep the old row so that you can see what was changed.

> **Additional Information:**   Document Your Concurrent Program Customizations (Recommended), Preserve CUSTOM Library Customizations (Recommended), and Preserve GUI Menu Customizations (Recommended) in this chapter

Single Product Group Per Database Instance

Starting with Release 10.7, and due to the use of objects in SYSTEM, you can no longer have more than one set of Oracle Application Object Library tables (that is,

one APPLSYS schema or one product group) in a single ORACLE database. Therefore, if you are upgrading from Release 10.4, 10.5, or 10.6, you must move any additional product groups to a separate database.

> **Additional Information:** Separate Product Groups, *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition, UNIX Edition*

Verify Data Groups

If you wish to use cross-application reporting with Standard Report Submission, you must add any custom applications to data groups. You should copy the appropriate data group created by the installation and add your custom application to the copy. Assign the new copied and modified data group to a responsibility. With data groups you can specify which ORACLE ID (schema) your reports should run in.

> **Additional Information:** Verify Data Groups, in this chapter

Implement the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow

In Release 11, a new feature—the Account Generator—replaces FlexBuilder. The Account Generator utilizes the drag-and-drop user interface of Oracle Workflow. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you should follow the upgrade steps in the FlexBuilder chapter of this manual. Note that to use the Account Generator feature, you must install Oracle Workflow.

> **Additional Information:** Chapter 12 in this manual

Flexfield Date Values

Value sets defined with a Date format and maximum size of 9 or with a DateTime format and maximum size of 15 or 18 used date format masks of DD-MON-YY, DD-MON-YY HH24:MI, or DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS prior to Release 10.7. In Release 10.7 (and later), which supports the Year 2000, these value sets use the masks DD-MON-RR, DD-MON-RR HH24:MI, and DD-MON-RR HH24:MI:SS. Date values prior to 01-JAN-51 defined for these value sets will be treated as 21st century dates. For example, 01-JAN-49, which used to be treated as 01-JAN-1949, will now be treated as 01-JAN-2049, and 01-JAN-00, which used to be treated as 01-JAN-1900, will now be treated as 01-JAN-2000. You should evaluate which value sets at your

site use such values (date values prior to 01-JAN-51) and modify those values appropriately to avoid unwanted behavior.

> **Additional Information:** Check Flexfield Values for Invalid Dates, in this chapter

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes and enhancements to Oracle System Administration may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your implementation manual and user's guide for complete information about product functionality.

RPT No Longer Supported

In Release 11, we have removed all support for RPT as an execution method. Any programs that have SQL*Report as an execution method will be disabled. If you have any programs written using RPT, you must rewrite them using a supported execution method or tool, such as Oracle Reports.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle System Administration for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle System Administration	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ **1.** Separate Multiple Product Groups	Technical Specialist
❏ **2.** Verify ORACLE IDs	Technical Specialist
❏ **3.** Rename Your Value Sets	System Administrator
❏ **4.** Check Flexfield Values for Invalid Dates	System Administrator
❏ **5.** Document Your Concurrent Program Customizations (Recommended)	Technical Specialist

Oracle System Administration		
Steps		**Performed by**
❏	**6.** Preserve CUSTOM Library Customizations (Recommended)	Technical Specialist
❏	**7.** Preserve and Convert GUI Help Customizations (Recommended)	Technical Specialist
❏	**8.** Purge Old Concurrent Requests (Recommended)	System Administrator
❏	**9.** Delete from FND_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGINS (Recommended)	Technical Specialist
❏	**10.** Preserve GUI Menu Customizations (Recommended)	System Administrator
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle System Administration.		
❏	**11.** Enable the Application User SYSADMIN	System Administrator
❏	**12.** Identify PL/SQL Log File Directory	Technical Specialist/Database Administrator
❏	**13.** Ensure All Concurrent Requests Have Completed	System Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Separate Multiple Product Groups

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Installation**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Starting with Release 10.7, and due to the use of objects in SYSTEM, you can no longer have more than one set of Oracle Application Object Library tables (that is, one APPLSYS schema or one product group) in a single ORACLE database. Therefore, if you are upgrading from Release 10.4, 10.5, or 10.6, you must move any additional product groups to a separate database.

> **Additional Information:** Separate Product Groups, *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition, UNIX Edition*

Step 2: Verify ORACLE IDs

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

In the ORACLE Users window, your System Administrator should verify that all ORACLE passwords are correct and disable any ORACLE IDs that are no longer used. If there are any user-defined constraints on the objects within an ORACLE ID you wish to make obsolete, they should be disabled before you perform this step.

> **Additional Information:** Register ORACLE IDs and Oracle Applications Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Rename Your Value Sets

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Oracle Applications includes many predefined value sets, primarily for Standard Report Submission parameters. During an upgrade, Oracle Applications may overwrite your value sets if they use the same names.

Your system administrator should make sure that your value set names do not conflict with the ones that Oracle Applications provides. Any value set names that match those in Oracle Applications should be renamed so that AutoInstall does not overwrite them. Use the Value Sets window to rename your value sets.

Oracle Corporation reserves certain standard naming patterns for use by the Oracle Applications products—either two- or three-prefix characters immediately followed by either an underscore or hyphen. The following examples illustrate the four patterns:

- XX_VALUE_SET
- XXX_Value Set
- XX-VALUE_SET
- XXX-Value Set

You should *not* use these naming patterns for your custom value sets (to avoid potential conflict in future upgrades). Instead, you should name your value sets with names we are unlikely to use. For example, you might want to give your value sets names that begin with a six-character name for your site.

Note that the Oracle Applications products did not always follow these guidelines in Release 10. So, in addition to verifying that your value sets do not use the Oracle Applications naming conventions, check the following lists and rename any conflicting value sets before you upgrade.

Table 1–1   Non-standard Oracle Applications Value Set Name Prefixes

CONC-
$FLEX$.
Jxxx_ (where xxx is any three letters, such as JEXX_)
OE:
SA -

Table 1–2   Non-standard Oracle Applications Value Set Names

15 Characters	Concurrent Program Name	Profile_test
20 Characters	DD-MON-YY HH:MI	REPORT_OPTION
30 Characters	Date	Regression suites
30 Characters Optional	Default Test for SRS	Regression_tests
4 Characters	ENTITY_PERIOD_NAME	Request Set Name
50 chars	FILEPATH	Responsibility ID
7/Number	FLEXBUILDER_PARAMETERS	Responsibility Name
APPL_RXR	FLEXCODE_RXR	Responsibility Name 4.0
ARXSTR_GL_DATE	FLEXSTRUCT_RXR	SRS Test Value Set
ARXSTR_GL_DATE_HIGH	FNDCPCRS_MODE	SalesOrder
ARXSTR_GL_DATE_LOW	FNDMDGEN_MODE	Sequence_num
ARXSTR_SHOW_ADJS_CMS	FNDSCSRC(Sort By)	Sort by for FNDSCSRL
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE	FORMAT_TYPE	Table_name
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE_HIGH	Filename	Terminal Groups
ARXSTR_TRX_DATE_LOW	Foo	Terminal Names
ARXVATRN_APPLICATION_DATE	Form_Title_to_Name	USER_PROFILE_OPTION
AUDIT_DATES	Generic	VersionNumber
AUDIT_END_DATE	HINA_MONTH	WIP Desc Val Set 1
AUDIT_START_DATE	Help_Download_Format_Options	WIP Desc Val Set 2
AUDIT_TABLE_NAME	INVTRREG_SRS_SORT	WIP Item Segment 2
AUDIT_USER_NAME	Inventory Organization	WIP Item Segment1
AZ Hierarchy	LEGAL_ENTITY	funds_action_flag
Address Line (30)	MOVEMENT_TYPE	
Application_Name	Menu_name	
Application_Name_to_Shortname	Operating Unit	
CONC_REQUEST_IDS	Operating Unit (secured)	
CS CONTACT	P_SORT_COLUMN_4	
CS None, Null allowed	PartNumber	
CS None, Required	PhysicalTags	
Categories	ProductFamily	

You can perform this step before you receive your new Oracle Applications software. Once you do, make sure that any new value sets created after you perform this step conform to your own naming conventions (and do not conflict with Oracle Applications naming conventions).

> **Additional Information:**   Define Value Set Flexfields, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*

Step 4: Check Flexfield Values for Invalid Dates
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

As described in the Overview section of this chapter, flexfield date values have been changed to support 21st Century dates. You should evaluate which value sets at your site use date values prior to 01-JAN-50 and modify those values as appropriate to avoid unwanted behavior. You can determine which value sets use these date formats by using the Value Sets window to query all value sets that have a format type of Date or DateTime. In the case of Independent and Dependent value sets, such date values can be disabled using the Segment Values window. Disable these values by setting the value of Enabled to No.

For table-validated value sets, check the value column of the validation table. If such dates are present, they should be updated to values after 01-JAN-50, or restricted from the value set by modifying the Additional Where Clause. You cannot enter any new values that are prior to 01-JAN-50 for non-validated value sets (validation type of None). You should also check the minimum and maximum values and default values for value sets and modify them appropriately.

Evaluate which flexfields use these value sets and whether your existing flexfield data (key or descriptive) uses any of the invalid dates. Such values in existing records will not be read correctly when you query these records. Modify these records appropriately.

Note that the Date and DateTime formats are for backward compatibility only—for any new value sets, you should be using the Standard Date and Standard DateTime formats.

Step 5: Document Your Concurrent Program Customizations (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you updated any concurrent program registrations provided by Oracle Applications, the upgrade process will overwrite your customizations. You should document the information you entered in the Concurrent Programs window for each customized concurrent program. The easiest way to do this is to query the appropriate row in the Concurrent Programs window and print the screen.

The upgrade process may affect the updated concurrent program registrations, and you may need to reregister the programs the way you want them when the upgrade process finishes. After the upgrade, you can use the Concurrent Programs window to reregister or update concurrent programs using the information in your screen printout. This step applies only to Oracle Applications concurrent programs that you have updated or created.

You can perform this step before you receive your new Oracle Applications software. Once you do, make sure that no one updates Oracle Applications concurrent programs after you perform this step.

> **Additional Information:**   Product Customization Standards, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*

Step 6: Preserve CUSTOM Library Customizations (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.5SC, 10.6SC, 10.7SC, 10.7 NCA**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Coding Standards, Release 10SC**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you have modified the CUSTOM library, such as for a Release 10SC or a 10.7 NCA Zoom, the upgrade process overwrites your customizations. You must save a backup copy of your CUSTOM library and replace it after you finish upgrading Oracle Applications.

> **Additional Information:**   Zoom and the CUSTOM Library*, Oracle Applications Coding Standards, Release 10SC*

Step 7: Preserve and Convert Help Customizations (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 NCA**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Each Oracle Application product is delivered with a "dummy" custom help file. These files are located in $AU_TOP/docs/<language>/<appl.short name>CUST and are linked to the core help files. In order to preserve the link to core help, your custom help files must be in this directory and must have an .HTM extension.

If you have custom help files created prior to Release 11, you will need to save them to a safe directory and re-propagate them after the upgrade, as well as ensure that they are .HTM files.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Applications Help, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 8: Purge Old Concurrent Requests (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Your system administrator may want to run the Purge Concurrent Requests and/or Managers report to purge concurrent requests. Run the report in either AGE or COUNT mode to purge concurrent requests based on the number of days old or the number of old requests to be retained. Use the Submit Request window to run this report.

> **Additional Information:** Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data Program, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 9: Delete from FND_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGINS (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Users must log off this application: **No**

FND_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGINS records unsuccessful login attempts to Oracle Applications. If you no longer need this information, we recommend that you delete all the rows from this table to improve the performance of your upgrade.

```
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password>
SQL> truncate table fnd_unsuccessful_logins;
```

Step 10: Preserve GUI Menu Customizations (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.5SC, 10.6SC, 10.7SC, 10.7NCA**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 10SC**

Users must log off this application: **No**

This step applies only if you have installed a SmartClient (10SC) or a 10.7 NCA release and have customized existing GUI menus or created new ones. The upgrade process may remove or overwrite customized menus, so you should preserve them before you begin. To document your menus, run the appropriate Function Security reports for the responsibilities of interest.

> **Additional Information:** Function Security Reports, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 10SC*

To preserve your customized GUI menus, use the Function Security Loader (FNDSLOAD) executable to extract and restore individual menus or all menus attached to all responsibilities registered under a given application. On UNIX platforms, the FNDSLOAD executable can be found under $FND_TOP/bin.

> **Additional Information:** Function Security Loader, *Oracle Applications System Administration Guide, Release 10SC*

Use FNDSLOAD to extract the menu definitions from the database to a text file. For example, to download one menu, you would type the following.

> **Note:** If your are upgrading from 10.5SC, replace <APPS username> and <APPS password> with <APPLSYS username> and <APPLSYS password>.

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile DOWNLOAD MYMENU
```

where myfile is the export filename and MYMENU is the name of the GUI menu to be extracted. To download menus for an entire application:

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile DOWNLOAD MYAPP
```

where myfile is the export filename (extension .slt) and MYAPP is the shortname for the application of the GUI responsibilities under which all menus are to be extracted.

After the AutoInstall upgrade, you will use FNDSLOAD to restore the menu definitions from the text file to the database. For example:

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile INSERT
```

where myfile is the text filename. This operation is insert-only and will not update records already present in the database.

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle System Administration. Be sure that no one is using the Oracle Applications system.

Step 11: Enable the Application User SYSADMIN
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

During the upgrade process, AutoInstall must access the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username using the application user SYSADMIN. Ensure that this application user exists and is enabled. In addition, SYSADMIN must have access to the System Administrator responsibility. You should ensure that the name of this responsibility remains System Administrator and that it connects to the APPLSYS schema (for 10.6 or earlier) or APPS schema (for 10.7 or higher) for its data group.

Step 12: Identify/Create PL/SQL Log File Directory
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

You need to choose a temporary directory for log and output files from PL/SQL concurrent programs. If this directory does not exist, you must create it. Once you have chosen or created the directory, enter it as the value for the utl_fil_dir variable in init.ora for your database. Then, when prompted by AutoInstall or AD Administration (during the creation of the Applications environment file), identify the APPLPTMP variable value to the directory you chose.

> **Note:** This variable name is APPLPTMP, which is similar to, but not the same as, APPLTMP.

Step 13: Ensure All Concurrent Requests Have Completed
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Ensure that all concurrent requests have run to completion before you start the upgrade. Cancel pending requests as necessary.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle System Administration, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle System Administration	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ 1. Fix Flexfields Cross-validation Rules	Technical Specialist
❏ 2. Set Profile Options	System Administrator
❏ 3. Verify Data Groups	System Administrator
❏ 4. Start Concurrent Managers	Technical Specialist
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature.	
❏ 5. Set Up Report Security Groups (Recommended	System Administrator

Oracle System Administration		
Steps		**Performed by**
❏	**6.** Reconnect Your Spawned Concurrent Programs (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**7.** Recreate/Validate Custom Menus (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏	**8.** Update/Verify Custom Responsibilities (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏	**9.** Copy and Re-customize any Previously Modified Scripts or Reports (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	**10.** Upgrade Your Accounting Calendar (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Fix Flexfields Cross-validation Rules

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Disable or delete any key flexfield cross-validation rules that have no lines. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to Applications > Flexfield > Key > Cross Validation. In prior releases, cross-validation rules without lines were ignored. Now, they are considered violated because they include no range of combinations.

Run the script affixcvr.sql to ensure the consistency of your flexfield cross-validation rule data:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

Step 2: Set Profile Options

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

The following table lists profile options that may need to be set.

Profile Option	Description
Applications Web Agent	Provides the base URL for the APPS schema's WebServer DAD. Use the following syntax to enter your URL: `http://machine:port/<DAD>/plsql` See Oracle Web Application Server online documentation for more information.
Gateway User ID	The ORACLE login for the gateway account. For example, applsyspub/pub.
TWO TASK	Specifies the TWO_TASK for the database. This profile is used in conjunction with the Gateway User ID profile to construct a connect string for use in creating dynamic URLs for the WebServer. This should be set to the SQL*NET.alias for the database.
Site Name	Identifies an installation of Oracle Applications. The installation process sets this profile option to No Site Name Specified, which you should change to a meaningful name.
Attachment File Upload Directory	Set this profile option if your installation uses attachments within a self-service application such as Web Requisitions or Web Store. This option provides the directory path used to upload attachment files.
Help System Base URL	The base URL to the Applications Help System.
Viewer:Text, PostScript, PDF, and HTML	Sets the viewer of your choice when you review online the log and output files from your concurrent requests. For example, if Viewer: Text is set to Browser, the text files are opened in a browser window. Otherwise, text files will be opened in the File Viewer form.

> **Additional Information:**   Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Verify Data Groups
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Data groups control which ORACLE schema the concurrent requests that users submit from their responsibilities should run in. To verify data groups, navigate to the Data Groups window. The ORACLE ID for all Oracle Applications products in a data group should be set to the name of the APPS schema used for that data group. Custom applications can be integrated into this schema and can be set to the same ORACLE ID.

> **Additional Information:** Define Data Group, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide;* APPS Schemas *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition*

Step 4: Start Concurrent Managers
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

You will need to start the concurrent manager to complete the post-install steps for your products. Refer to Appendix A in *Oracle Applications Installation* for more information.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 5: Set Up Report Security Groups (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Reports**

Oracle Applications uses Standard Report Submission to launch most reports. You can create report security groups to provide access to only those reports that each responsibility needs.

After Release 10.6, the All Reports standard security group lists the names of all reports.

> **Additional Information:** Organizing Programs into Request Groups (*Oracle Applications System Administration Guide*)

Step 6: Reconnect Your Spawned Concurrent Programs (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Object Application Library Technical Reference Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Concurrent Processing**

If you have developed any concurrent programs that use the Host execution method, you need to reconnect the programs to the concurrent manager interface. To complete this step, you should first change your working directory to the directory that contains your concurrent program executable. Then enter the following commands to copy and reconnect your concurrent program:

```
$ cd $<PROD>_TOP/bin
$ ln -s $FND_TOP/bin/fndcpesr <program>
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

<program>	The name you used to define your concurrent program executable in Oracle Applications without any filename extension.
<PROD>	Your custom application product short name.

Perform this step for all concurrent programs you developed and registered with the Host execution method.

> **Additional Information:** Implementing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Processing and Product Customizations Standards, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*'

Step 7: Recreate/Validate Custom Menus (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Use FNDSLOAD to restore the menu definitions you have preserved during the pre-upgrade steps. For example:

```
FNDSLOAD <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y LOCAL myfile INSERT
```

where myfile is the text filename. This operation is insert-only and will not update records already present in the database.

You should verify your custom menu structures and make sure that they point to correct form names. Also, verify that your custom menus are not pointing to forms which no longer exist.

Character-mode menus must be recreated from scratch. The upgrade process automatically changes SmartClient and NCA menus to refer to a replacement object in any place where there was a reference to an obsolete object in the new release.

> **Additional Information:** Defining a New Menu (*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*)

Step 8: Update/Verify Custom Responsibilities (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.5SC, 10.6SC, 10.7SC, 10.7NCA**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Responsibilities**

```
If you created a custom responsibility, then you must verify that it uses the
correct menu after the upgrade. You should query every custom responsibility
using the Responsibilities form and update as necessary.
```

Step 9: Copy and Re-customize any Previously Modified Scripts or Reports (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Concurrent Processing**

If you have customized any shell scripts or reports that are part of Oracle Applications, copy them to your custom application directories and re-customize the copy as necessary.

> **Additional Information:**   Product Customization Standards*, Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 10: Upgrade Your Accounting Calendar (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Accounting Calendar**

If you set up your accounting calendar for any Oracle Applications product in a previous release and you wish to use the same accounting calendar(s) for a newly installed product(s), you must copy your calendar information for each new product. To upgrade your accounting calendar, complete the following steps:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glips.sql
```

Copy your calendar information.You can find the exact name of your set of books by moving to the Define window.

When SQL*Plus prompts for...	Do this...
NEW_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value for your new product. For example, for Oracle Payables enter 200, for Oracle Purchasing enter 201.
INSTALLED_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value 101 to copy the Oracle General Ledger accounting calendar.
SET_OF_BOOKS_NAME	Enter the full name, enclosed in single quotation marks, of the set of books using the accounting calendar. For example, Fremont Manufacturing.

The Oracle Applications product IDs are listed in the following table.

Oracle Applications Product	Product ID
Global Accounting Engine (AX)	600
Oracle Alert	160
Oracle Assets	140
Oracle Bills of Material	702
Oracle Financials for Europe	7002
Oracle General Ledger	101
Oracle Human Resources	800
Oracle Inventory	401
Oracle Order Entry	300
Oracle Payables	200
Oracle Project Accounting	275
Oracle Purchasing	201
Oracle Receivables	222
Oracle Sales Compensation	283

Repeat these steps for each new Oracle Applications product for which you wish to copy an existing accounting calendar.

After You Verify Your Upgrade

After you have completed and verified your upgrade, you should complete the steps in this section to perform "clean-up" tasks such as dropping unneeded database objects and the like. Note also that some of these steps must be performed for all Applications, not just those that are licensed installed or shared since all database components are installed and upgraded together

Step 1: Drop Unneeded Database Objects (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Some Oracle Applications products contain database objects (tables, views, and so on) that Release 11 does not use. To take maximum advantage of your database space, you can run SQL*Plus scripts ($<PROD>_TOP/admin/sql/<prod>dold.sql) to remove them after you confirm your upgrade. You can see a list of the objects that are dropped in the individual script.

> **Warning:** **Do not run these scripts until you have verified that AutoInstall has run successfully to completion, and that your upgrade was successful.**

To run the scripts, first enter the following command, where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
```

Then, refer to the following table, which lists the products that contain unneeded database objects and the scripts you need to run to remove the objects.

For this product...	Run this script to remove unneeded database objects...
Oracle Human Resources	`$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/perdold.sql \` `<HR username> <HR password>`
Oracle Sales and Marketing (AS) (See Note)	`$ sqlplus <APPS username><APPS password> @$AS_TOP/admin/sql/asxdold.sql \` `<AS username> <AS password>`
Oracle System Administration	`$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @$FND_TOP/admin/sql/fnddold.sql \` `$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$FND_TOP/admin/sql/fnddold.sql`
Oracle Work in Process (See Note)	`$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$WIP_TOP/admin/sql/wipdold.sql \` `<WIP username> <WIP password>`

Note: This product is a multiple install product. You must run the script once for each APPS schema and base product combination (for example, once for APPS/WIP and once for APPS2/WIP2).

If you are upgrading from Release 10.5 and had Oracle Financials for Latin America installed for either Argentina or Brazil, then refer to the following table, which lists the scripts you should run to drop unneeded database objects for those products.

For this product...	Run this script to remove unneeded database objects...

Oracle Financials for Latin America (JL/Argentina) and (JL/Brazil) (1)	`$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$JL_TOP/admin/sql/jldold.sql \`
	`<AOL username> <AOL password> <AR username> <AR password> \`
	`<AP username> <AP password> <PO username> <PO password> \`
	`<JL username> <JL password>`

1) This product is a multiple installation product. You must run the script once for each APPS schema and base product combination (for example, once for APPS/WIP and once for APPS2/WIP2).

Step 2: Set Up or Verify Parallel Concurrent Processing
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Concurrent Processing**

If you want to use Parallel Concurrent Processing to spread your concurrent processing load across several nodes, you must first set up your concurrent managers on different nodes. Navigate to the Nodes window in the System Administration responsibility. Register the nodes you wish to use and define the managers and internal monitors you need.

> **Additional Information:** Define Concurrent Manager and Register Nodes, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

2

Oracle Application Object Library

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Application Object Library (AOL) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Application Object Library software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Application Object Library with AutoInstall.

If you have custom applications or have made customizations to Oracle Applications products (such as new forms, reports or database modifications), you should follow the upgrade steps in this chapter.

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Application Object Library.

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes affect all applications that have customizations made using Oracle Applications System Administration and Oracle Application Object Library.

GUI Applications

With Release 11, all Oracle Applications are delivered as full GUI applications. The Release 11 Oracle Applications environment takes full advantage of native Oracle Forms features.

Network Computing Architecture (NCA)

In Release 11, Oracle Applications use Network Computing Architecture (NCA). NCA provides a framework for multi-tiered, distributed computing. Taking advantage of application servers, database servers, and desktop clients working

together, it provides a cross-platform, standards-based environment for developing and deploying network-centric applications.

With NCA, software administration is centralized. Oracle Applications software is installed only on servers, not on client machines. End users can access Oracle Applications from any Java-enabled desktop client. The desktop clients run standard desktop software and no Applications software, which runs only on application servers resident in central data centers.

Note that upgrading to this architecture from the earlier SmartClient applications is a change in the underlying tool technology, not in the applications code, since Oracle Applications continues to be built using Oracle Developer/2000. Thus, the upgrade process for your custom forms (built with Oracle Forms 4.5) involves simply regenerating the forms. Applications functionality and the user interface remain the same as in SmartClient.

Important Upgrade Steps

This section lists potentially time-consuming upgrade tasks and alerts you to important decisions that you need to make when you upgrade or implement Oracle Application Object Library.

Rewrite SQL*Forms 2.3 Custom Forms in Oracle Forms 4.5

If you have custom forms written in SQL*Forms 2.3 in Release 10, you need to rewrite them in Oracle Forms 4.5 and then generate the new forms for Network Computing Architecture.

Implement Network Computing Architecture (NCA)

If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient) architecture to NCA, and all your custom forms are already in Oracle 4.5, you need to regenerate these custom forms.

Implement the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow Builder

In Release 11, a new feature—the Account Generator—replaces FlexBuilder. The Account Generator utilizes the drag-and-drop user interface of Oracle Workflow Builder. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you need to follow the upgrade steps in the FlexBuilder chapter of this manual. Note that to use the Account Generator feature, Oracle Workflow Builder must also be installed on the desktop client.

Additional Information: Chapter 12 in this manual

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Application Object Library for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Application Object Library	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ 1. Rewrite Custom Character-mode Forms in Oracle Forms 4.5 (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ 2. Convert Custom Reports that Use SQL*Report (RPT), FlexRpt, and FlexSQL (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ 3. Convert Message Dictionary Functions (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ 4. Convert User Profile APIs in C Concurrent Programs (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Rewrite Custom Character-mode Forms in Oracle Forms 4.5 (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Oracle Applications User Interface Standards**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you are upgrading from the Release 10 character-mode SQL*Forms 2.3, you need to rewrite your custom forms in Oracle Forms 4.5.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11; Oracle Applications User Interface Standards, Release 11

Step 2: Convert Custom Reports that Use SQL*Report (RPT), FlexRpt, and FlexSQL (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Reports Reference Manual or Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Beginning with Release 11, SQL*Report (RPT), the flexfield APIs FlexRpt and FlexSQL are no longer supported. Custom reports that use these programs should be rewritten using a tool such as Oracle Reports.

Step 3: Convert Message Dictionary Functions (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10, Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Remove the following Message Dictionary functions from your custom code:

Function	Action
fddgcs/fddgme	Since there is no longer a cascading stack or a message explanation, these functions are obsolete and should be removed.
fddtoken	Replace with afdtoken. The syntax is: `boolean afdtoken(/*_ text *token_name, text *token_value _*/);` Requires fddutl.h header file.
fddname	Replace with afdname. This function takes two arguments (the fddname function takes only the message name). The syntax is: `boolean afdname(/*_ text *applsname, text *msg_name _*/);` Requires fddutl.h header file.

Function	Action
fddget	Although supported in Release 11, we strongly recommend that you convert to afdget. The new interface allows you to pass a buffer and buffer size. The old interface assumed the existence of a fixed-size global variable that is internal to the function. The syntax is: `boolean afdget(/*_ text *msg_buf, size_t buf_size _*/);` Requires fddutl.h header file.
fddmsg	Convert to afderror or afdshow. We strongly recommend using these functions explicitly so that you get the intended display behavior (because the new message system display is based on the function called, not on the message properties). The syntax is: `boolean afderror(/*_ void _*/);` Requires fddutl.h header file.

Additional Information: Oracle Application Object Library
Technical Reference Manual, Release 10; Oracle Applications
Developer's Guide, Release 11

Step 4: Convert User Profile APIs in C Concurrent Programs (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10, Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Remove the following functions from your C concurrent programs:

Function	Action
fdpgov	Convert to afpoget. The function afpoget() gets the current value of a profile option. It returns TRUE if successful, FALSE if it cannot find the profile option value. It also returns FALSE when it retrieves a profile that exists but has no value. You must include the file fdpopt.h in your C code file (#include<fdpopt.h>) to use this C function.

The syntax is:

```
boolean afpoget(/*_ text *option_name,
                    text *option_value _*/);
```

where <option_name> is the name of the profile option, and <option_value> is the profile option value returned by the function.

Function	Action
fdppov	Convert to afpoput. The function afpoput() changes the value of a profile option within the scope of the current process. This function returns TRUE if successful. It returns FALSE if it tries to change the value of a profile option for which the WRITE flag is set to No, or if it tries to create a profile option for which the ENABLE_CREATE flag is not set. You must include the file fdpopt.h in your C code file (#include <fdpopt.h>) to use this C function.

The syntax is:

```
boolean afpoput(/*_ text *option_name,
                    text *option_value _*/);
```

where <option_name> is the name of the profile option, and <option_value> is the value to which you wish to change the profile option for the current session. All values are stored as text. The value may be more than 240 characters.

> **Additional Information:** User Profiles, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10*; User Profiles *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11*

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Application Object Library, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Application Object Library

Steps	Performed by

Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Application Object Library.

		Steps	Performed by
❏	1.	Update Custom Calls to FND_LOOKUPS (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏	2.	Update Custom Calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏	3.	Rename the /srw Directory to /reports for Your Custom Applications (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	4.	Copy Custom Forms Library to $AU_TOP/resource (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	5.	Copy Custom .fmb files to the $AU_TOP Directory (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	6.	Regenerate Your Custom Forms (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	7.	Convert Character-mode Messages to GUI for Custom Applications (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	8.	Regenerate, Recompile, and Relink Custom Concurrent Program Libraries. (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏	9.	Edit Your Custom Profile Definitions (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Application Object Library listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 1: Update Custom Calls to FND_LOOKUPS (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Flexfields**

Oracle Applications has replaced lowercase flexfield codes in FND_LOOKUPS with new uppercase codes. These changes are applied automatically during the

AutoInstall process. If you have any customizations that use FND_LOOKUPS codes, you need to change your customizations to use these new values.

Changes to FND_LOOKUPS Codes			
Table Name	**Column**	**Old Value**	**New Value**
FND_FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	EVENT_CODE	e	O
FND_FLEX_VALUE_SETS	FORMAT_TYPE	t	I
FND_ID_FLEX_SEGMENTS	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A
FND_DESCR_FLEX_COLUMN_USAGES	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A

Step 2: Update Custom Calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom flexfields**

In Release 11, Oracle Applications has added a NAME column to FND_DESCR_ FLEX_CONTEXT_TL. AutoInstall populates the new column with names based on the codes in FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT. You will need to modify any customizations that access FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL to properly access the table.

Step 3: Rename the /srw Directory to /reports for your Custom Applications (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Your custom application**

Change the name of the ∕srw directory to ∕reports for each custom application.

Step 4: Copy Custom Forms Library to $AU_TOP/resource (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Your custom application**

Copy your custom forms library (.pll) to $AU_TOP/resource. You must complete this step before you regenerate your custom forms.

Step 5: Copy Custom .fmb Files to the $AU_TOP Directory (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Your custom application**

Put copies of your custom .fmb files in the $AU_TOP/forms/<language> directory. You should keep the original copies of your forms in your $<custom>_ TOP/forms/<language> directory since any files in $AU_TOP may be overwritten when you upgrade to the next release.

Step 6: Regenerate Your Custom Forms (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Your custom application**

You need to regenerate your custom forms (create .fmx) for the Network Computing Architecture. You may need to regenerate your custom forms libraries first (create .plx).

Step 7: Convert Character-mode Messages to GUI for Custom Applications (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do this before anyone uses: **Your custom applications**

If you have defined custom Message Dictionary messages using a custom application name in the character-mode Define Messages form (typically because you have character-mode custom applications that use Message Dictionary), you can run the program FNDMDCVT to convert your messages for Release 11. You can run this program once for each custom application at your site.

This program copies all of the messages for the application in the FND_MESSAGES message table, concatenates the extended message text on the message text, and parses the special formatting codes in the old messages to produce plain text. It then

inserts the new messages into the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table. If a message with that name, language, and application already exists in the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table, the insert fails and the previously existing row is left alone. Only the U.S. language messages are transferred by this converter.

1. Make sure that $FND_TOP/bin is in your path.

2. Run the FNDMDCVT program from the operating system prompt:

```
$ FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
```

where APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want messages converted.

3. After running FNDMDCVT, use the Messages window to query up the messages for your application and verify that they were converted successfully. You may need to adjust any special formatting of your messages if the formatting of the old messages had any peculiarities (for example, old formatting text that had not been entered correctly may remain and should be deleted).

4. In order to generate the Message Dictionary runtime message file, you must run FNDMDGEN for each custom application.

   Run the FNDMDGEN program from the operating system prompt:

```
$ FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \
   <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
```

where LANG_SHORT_NAME is the language short name and APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want the message file generated.

Step 8: Regenerate, Recompile, and Re-link Custom Concurrent Program Libraries (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do this before anyone uses: **Custom concurrent program libraries**

As a result of a change in the way that concurrent program libraries are constructed, you will need to regenerate, recompile, and re-link your customized concurrent program libraries.

1. Log in to the Application Developer responsibility.

2. Navigate to the Concurrent Program Libraries form.

3. Query your custom library and press Generate.

   This submits a concurrent request that will create a file named <libraryname>.c in the /lib directory under the application product tree to which the program library belongs. For example, library CUSTLIBR, a custom program registered under application Custom Application with a basepath XXCST_TOP, will be generated under $XXCST_TOP/lib/CUSTLIBR.c.

4. Compile and link this file.

5. Place the executable in the /bin directory for the appropriate product.

   > **Additional Information:**   Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

Step 9: Edit Your Custom Profile Definitions (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Developer's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Custom Profile Options**

With Release 10.6, you can retrieve text from Message Dictionary for your List of Values and profile definitions. To accommodate this change, you should add the token HEADING=N to any profile definitions that do not explicitly specify a HEADING. Use the Personal Profile Values window to make this change.

Profiles now automatically append the profile name as the title of the List of Values for the profile option. Specify TITLE=N to override this behavior.

   > **Additional Information:**   Profiles Window, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

3

Oracle Alert

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Alert (ALR) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Alert with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in this new version of Oracle Alert and the associated upgrade steps may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Alert.

Important Changes in Functionality

Several enhancements in Oracle Alert Release 11 make it possible to support multiple organizations in your Oracle Applications installation.

- If you have multiple organizations set up for your Oracle Applications installation, you can specify the organization you want to check your alert against. Go to the Alert Details window>Installations alternative region and use the new Organization Name field to identify the organization in the Oracle Applications schema that you want the alert to run against.

- Oracle Alert now supplies the value for a new implicit input called :ORG_ID. The value is the organization ID that is selected when the alert runs.

- The message handle for alert messages that require a response is extended to include the ORACLE ID and the organization ID of the Oracle Applications schema and organization that the alert is run against. The format is as follows:

```
Message #:<Oracle_Alert_installation_number.message_number.ORACLE_ID.organization_ID>
```

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Alert for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Alert

Steps	Performed by
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ **1.** Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks Alert	Database Administrator
❏ **2.** Increase Table and Index MAXEXTENTS Storage Parameters	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks Alert

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

This periodic alert clears your Oracle Alert tables of old alert check and action set check data. For best upgrade performance, you should consider keeping the ALR_ACTION_HISTORY table reasonably small. The recommended size is 20,000 rows or less. You can use the following SQL statement to trim the table by deleting history data that is older than 7 days:

```
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password>
SQL> DELETE FROM ALR_ACTION_HISTORY
WHERE (SYSDATE – LAST_UPDATE_DATE) > 7;
```

Step 2: Increase Table and Index MAXEXTENTS Storage Parameters
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

To increase the table and index MAXEXTENTS storage parameters for the ALR_
ALERTS table, log in as <AOL username> and run the following SQL statement:

```
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password>
SQL> SELECT TABLE_NAME, MAX_EXTENTS FROM USER_TABLES
     WHERE TABLE_NAME='ALR_ALERTS';
```

If the MAXEXTENTS value is less than 50, run the following SQL statements:

```
SQL> ALTER TABLE ALR_ALERTS STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 50);
SQL> ALTER INDEX ALR_ALERTS_U1 STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 50);
SQL> ALTER INDEX ALR_ALERTS_U2 STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 50);
SQL> ALTER INDEX ALR_ALERTS_N1 STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 50);
```

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you
have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Alert, and a detailed explanation of each
step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step
categories and how to use them.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Alert	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Alert.	
❑ 1. Associate Organization Names to Pre-existing Alert Definitions (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Alert)

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Alert.

Step 1: Associate Organization Names to Pre-existing Alert Definitions (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Alert)**

Do before anyone uses: **Alert definition**

If you have a pre-existing alert that you defined in Release 10 and you now want it to check against a particular organization, you must manually update the alert. Display the definition in the Alerts form. Choose Alert Details, then display the Installations alternative region in the Alert Details window. Enter the ORACLE ID and organization name that you want to run this alert against. Make sure you check Enabled before you save your changes and close the window.

4

Oracle Assets

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Assets (FA) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Assets with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in this version of Oracle Assets may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Assets uses single organization architecture (SOA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Assets.

Important Upgrade Steps

In Release 10, you could create Accounting Flexfield code combinations automatically using the FlexBuilder feature. In Release 11, FlexBuilder has been replaced by the Oracle Workflow Account Generator to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

Before the upgrade, review the way Oracle Assets uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for information on the options you should consider, and the upgrade steps you may need to set up and use the Account Generator.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Assets for an upgrade, and a detailed explanation of each step. The steps are

organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Assets	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing files system.	
❏ 1. Verify that Journal Categories Are Unique Within a Book	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ 2. Apply Patch 236626	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Verify that Journal Categories Are Unique Within a Book

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Journal categories must be unique within a book—each transaction type must have a distinct journal category for that book. In character-mode versions, you can verify that these categories are unique in the Journal Format zone of the Book Controls form. In GUI versions, you can verify that these categories are unique in the Journal Format region of the Book Controls window. Query each depreciation book and check to see that all the transaction types have unique journal categories.

> **Additional Information:** Book Controls, *Oracle Assets Reference Manual, Release 10*; Defining Depreciation Books *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 10SC*

If you need to create additional journal entry categories, use the Define Journal Entry Categories form (character mode) or the Journal Categories window (GUI).

> **Additional Information:** Define Journal Entry Categories *Oracle Assets Reference Manual, Release 10*); Set Up Financials General Ledger Journal Categories *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 10SC*)

Step 2: Apply Patch 236626
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

> **Attention:** You must request patch 236626 from Oracle Support Services and apply it before you proceed with your upgrade.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Assets, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Assets	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses Oracle Assets.	
❏ 1. (a) Specify Revaluation Reserve Retired Gain and Loss Accounts (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
(b) Run SQL*Plus Script (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Assets.	
❏ 2. Set Up Your System to Handle Units of Production Assets (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ 3. Set Up Your System to Handle Revaluation of Assets (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)

Oracle Assets	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **4.** Set Up Your System to Create Journal Entries to Multiple Accounts for Retirements (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **5.** Set Up Your System to Handle Mass Depreciation Adjustment (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **6.** Set Up Your System to Allow General Ledger Posting for Tax Books (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **7.** Set Up Your System To Spawn Multiple Processes (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏ **8.** Set Up Your System to Use Subcomponent Life Rules (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **9.** Set Up Your System to Default Depreciation Rules by Date Placed In Service and Asset Category (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **10.** Set Up Your System to Use a Capital Gain Threshold (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **11.** Set Up Your System to Use Salvage Value as a Percentage of Asset Cost (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **12.** Set Up Your System to Use Depreciation Limits (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **13.** Set Up Your System to Mass Copy Salvage Value and Additions (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **14.** Set Up Your System to Use Multiple Fiscal Years (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **15.** Adjust Existing Assets for any Discounts (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **16.** Exclude Specified Assets from Physical Inventory (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)
❏ **17.** Pin What-If Depreciation Packages (Recommended)	Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Assets.

Step 1: (a) Specify Revaluation Reserve Retired Gain and Loss Accounts (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, or 10.6**.

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets**

Oracle Assets requires Revaluation Reserve Retired Gain and Loss accounts. These accounts are used to create accounting entries for gain or loss on the retirement of revaluation reserve. If you have not already entered them, specify these accounts in the Accounts region of the Book Controls window. These accounts are required for tax books as well as corporate books.

> **Attention:**   After you have specified the accounts, you must run the SQL*Plus script faxupbc.sql.

Step 1: (b) Run SQL*Plus Script (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, or 10.6.**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets**

The SQL*Plus script faxupbc.sql alters the table FA_BOOK_CONTROLS by setting the REVAL_RSV_RETIRED_GAIN_ACCT and REVAL_RSV_RETIRED_LOSS_ ACCT columns to Not Null.

To run the script, type the following commands where <FA username>/<FA password> is your Oracle Assets ORACLE ID:

```
$ cd $FA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <FA username>/<FA password> @faxupbc.sql
```

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Assets listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 2: Set Up Your System to Handle Units of Production Assets (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Addition of Units of Production Assets**

You can depreciate assets using a units of production depreciation method. With this method, Oracle Assets calculates the depreciation expense for an asset based on its actual production or use that period. You specify a production capacity and unit of measure for an asset, and then enter the production amount each period.

> **Additional Information:** Depreciation Based on Actual Production (*Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

To set up Oracle Assets to handle units of production assets, use the Flat-Rate Depreciation Methods window to define a units of production depreciation method. Then use the Asset Categories window to define a default capacity and unit of measure for units of production assets in that category. You can override these defaults when you add the asset if necessary.

> **Additional Information:** Depreciation Calculation for Flat-Rate Methods, Setting Up Asset Categories, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 3: Set Up Your System to Handle Revaluation of Assets (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Mass Revaluation**

You can revalue asset cost according to rates you enter. Revaluation is a common requirement in countries with high inflation rates. Over the course of time, the original asset cost does not accurately reflect the actual value of the asset in current currency, so the asset must be revalued.

> **Additional Information:** Asset Management in a Highly Inflationary Economy (Revaluation), *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

To set up Oracle Assets to handle revaluation of assets, use the Book Controls window to define revaluation rules for accumulated depreciation, for amortization of revaluation reserve, for revaluation ceilings, and for revaluation of fully reserved assets. Then, enter revaluation accounts in the Book Controls window and Asset Categories window. Use the Mass Revaluation window to perform revaluation.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Depreciation Books, Setting Up Asset Categories, Revaluing Assets, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 4: Set Up Your System to Create Journal Entries to Multiple Accounts for Retirements (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Calculate Gains and Losses, Create Journal Entries**

You can specify how to create journal entries for retirements. You can specify distinct accounts for each component of the gain/loss amount (proceeds of sale, cost of removal, net book value retired, and revaluation reserve retired). You can set up different sets of retirement accounts for retirements that result in a gain and retirements that result in a loss. Or, you can set up your retirement accounts so that Oracle Assets creates a journal entry for a single gain/loss account. You can also specify whether to retire the revaluation reserve, if any.

> **Additional Information:** Journal Entries for Retirements and Reinstatements, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

To set up Oracle Assets to create journal entries to multiple accounts for retirements, enter distinct gain, loss, and clearing accounts for each component of the gain/loss in the Accounts region of the Book Controls window.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Depreciation Books *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 5: Set Up Your System to Handle Mass Depreciation Adjustment (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Mass Depreciation Adjustment**

You can adjust the depreciation expense for all assets in a tax book for the previous fiscal year. Some reporting authorities allow you to adjust the depreciation expense, such as for French Fiscal Depreciation.

You specify a control tax depreciation book and a corporate depreciation book. Oracle Assets compares these books to the adjusted tax depreciation book to determine a minimum and maximum depreciation expense for each asset. You also specify a percentage by which Oracle Assets adjusts the depreciation expense for the adjusted book between the minimum and maximum depreciation expense.

> **Additional Information:** Handle Tax Audits, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

For French Fiscal Depreciation, use the Life-Based Depreciation Methods window to set up a depreciation method that uses a net book value Calculation Basis Rule. Then use the Book Controls window to set up a control tax book. Now you can use the Mass Depreciation Adjustment window to perform the adjustment.

> **Additional Information:** Depreciation Calculation for Table and Calculated Methods, Defining Depreciation Books, Handle Tax Adjustments, *Oracle Assets User's Guide Release 11*

Step 6: Set Up Your System to Allow General Ledger Posting for Tax Books (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Create Journal Entries from Tax Books**

You can create journal entries for tax accounts in your general ledger from your tax books. To set up your system to create journal entries from tax books, use the Book Controls window to Allow GL Posting for each tax book, and enter the general ledger set of books for tax accounting.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Depreciation Books, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 7: Set Up Your System to Spawn Multiple Processes (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Depreciation**

Oracle Assets spawns multiple processes for some programs, including depreciation. Specify the number of child processes to spawn using the FA: Number of Parallel Requests profile option.

> **Additional Information:** Overview of User Profile Options, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 8: Set Up Your System to Use Subcomponent Life Rules (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Addition of Subcomponent Assets**

With Oracle Assets, you can specify how the life of a subcomponent asset is dependent on its parent.

> **Attention:** If you want Oracle Assets to default the life of a leasehold improvement based on the life of the lease, you must set up subcomponent life rules for your leased categories.

> **Additional Information:** Lease Analysis, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Use the Asset Categories window to enter a subcomponent life rule for the category. Now, when you add a subcomponent asset, Oracle Assets defaults the life of the asset based on the life of the parent asset and the subcomponent life rule.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Asset Categories, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 9: Set Up Your System to Default Depreciation Rules by Date Placed in Service and Asset Category (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Addition of Assets Using Defaults by Date Placed in Service**

You can specify depreciation rule defaults for a category and range of dates placed in service and different sets of default depreciation rules for different ranges of dates placed in service. When you add an asset, the depreciation rules default according to the date placed in service of the asset. You can set up different defaults for dates placed in service as tax laws change.

Use the Asset Categories window to enter the effective dates and depreciation rules. Then, when you enter an asset, Oracle Assets defaults the depreciation rules based on the date placed in service and asset category.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Asset Categories, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 10: Set Up Your System to Use a Capital Gain Threshold (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Form 4797 Reports**

When you retire an asset, you can specify when to report it as a capital gain. You can specify a minimum time you must hold an asset for Oracle Assets to report a capital gain when you retire it.

Use the Book Controls window to set up the threshold. You can override this threshold for a category in the Asset Categories window, if necessary. Now, when you run the Form 4797 reports, Oracle Assets reports it as a capital gain only for assets held the minimum time you specified.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Depreciation Books, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 11: Set Up Your System to Use Salvage Value as a Percentage of Asset Cost (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Addition of Assets with Salvage Value**

You can specify salvage value as a percentage of asset cost at the asset category level.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Asset Categories, Defaulting Asset Salvage Value as a Percentage of Asset Cost, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 12: Set Up Your System to Use Depreciation Limits (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Addition of Assets with Depreciation Limit**

You can specify a depreciation limit at the asset category level as either an amount or as a percentage of cost.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Asset Categories, Depreciating Assets Beyond the Useful Life, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 13: Set Up Your System to Mass Copy Salvage Value and Additions (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Mass Copy**

You can specify whether to copy the salvage value from your corporate book to a tax book. If you copy adjustments into that tax book, Oracle Assets also copies adjustments to the salvage value. Use the Book Controls window to Copy Salvage Value for each tax book.

You can also specify whether to mass copy newly added assets from your corporate book to a tax book. Use the Mass Copy Additions check box to prevent new assets from being copied to an existing tax book. For example, you can prevent new assets from being added to an existing United States ACE book since ACE does not apply to assets added after December 31, 1993. Set the Mass Copy Additions check box to

No for the ACE book before running Mass Copy for the first period that starts after December 31, 1993.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining Depreciation Books, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 14: Set Up Your System to Use Multiple Fiscal Years (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Multiple Fiscal Years**

You can define multiple fiscal years and specify which fiscal year to use for each calendar. To set up fiscal years, use the Fiscal Years window. Then specify your new fiscal year in the Calendars window and Prorate Conventions window.

> **Additional Information:**   Setup Steps, Specifying Dates for Prorate Conventions, *Oracle Assets User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 15: Adjust Existing Assets for any Discounts (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Not Applicable**

When you run Create Mass Additions for Oracle Assets from Oracle Payables Release 10.5 or later, the process brings over potential asset invoice distribution lines and associated discounts. After upgrading, manually adjust existing assets or mass additions for any material discounts, if necessary.

Step 16: Exclude Specified Assets from Physical Inventory (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Assets)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Assets User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Not Applicable**

When you upgrade to Release 11, all existing capitalized assets will automatically be set to be included in physical inventory. You may have assets that should not be included in physical inventory, such as buildings and land. To specify that an existing asset not be included in physical inventory, query the asset and uncheck the In Physical Inventory check box.

> **Note:** Using the In Physical Inventory check box in the Asset Categories window to set the default to exclude assets in a particular category from the physical inventory affects *only* new assets. Existing assets in that category will not be changed automatically. You must query each existing asset and uncheck the In Physical Inventory check box in the Asset Details window.

Step 17: Pin What-If Depreciation Packages (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition**

Do before anyone uses: **Not Applicable**

To improve performance, we recommend that you pin the following packages:

- FA_WHATIF_DEPRN_PKG

- FA_WHATIF_DEPRN2_PKG

- FARX_C_WD

The ADXGNPIN.sql script pins packages and functions. Supply the name of a schema from which to pin objects (usually the APPS schema).

```
$ cd $AD_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus SYS/<SYS password> @ADXGNPIN.sql <schema name>
```

> **Additional Information:** Pin SGA Packages, *Oracle Applications Installation, UNIX Edition*)

5

Oracle Bills of Material

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Bills of Material (BOM) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Bills of Material with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Bills of Material may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Bills of Material uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Bills of Material.

> **Note:** There are no upgrade preparation steps for Oracle Bills of Material.

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes and enhancements to Oracle Bills of Material may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your product-specific documentation set for complete information about product functionality.

Workday Calendar Functionality

For Release 11, the Workday Calendar was modified so that a calendar is identified by a unique calendar code instead of a calendar code/exception set combination.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Bills of Material, and a detailed explanation of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Bills of Material	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Bills of Material.	
❏ 1. Update the Calendar Data	Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Bills of Material.

Step 1: Update the Calendar Data

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, or 10.6 (character mode)**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Bills of Material**

In Release 11, a calendar in the Workday Calendar is identified by a unique calendar code, instead of a calendar code/exception set combination. To update the calendar data, complete these steps:

1. Create a calendar code file.

```
$ cd $BOM_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @BOMBCAL1.sql <BOM username>\
  <BOM password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @BOMBCAL2.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @BOMBCAL3.sql
```

A BOMBCAL3.dat file is created in the current directory. Each line represents one record and is formatted as follows:

```
calendar_code,exception_set_name,new_calendar_code
```

For example:

```
testcall,3,rtexpl,-1,testc103
```

The new calendar code can now be modified, but it must remain unique within this file. If you modify BOMBCAL3.dat, make sure that the format remains intact, especially field delimiters (' and ").

2. If you changed any of the new calendar codes in the BOMBCAL3.dat file, run SQL*Loader using BOMBCAL3.ctl as the control file:

```
$ sqlldr userid=<APPS username>/<APPS password> control=BOMBCAL3.ctl
```

> **Attention:** If you did not modify BOMBCAL3.dat, omit this step.

3. Enter the following commands:

```
$ cd $BOM_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @BOMBCAL4.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @BOMBCAL5.sql <BOM username>\
  <BOM password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @bomcalfl.sql
```

4. Log in to Applications and choose the Application Developer responsibility.

5. Register the BOM_EXCEPTION_SET_DATES table. Navigate to Application>Database>Table>Register and set the Application parameter to Bills of Material and the Name parameter to BOM_EXCEPTION_SET_DATES.

6. Register the descriptive flexfield for table BOM_EXCEPTION_SET_DATES. Navigate to Flexfield>Descriptive>Register. Look up the descriptive flexfield for any other table for help with entering values in the form.

> **Note:** If you have multiple sets of books architecture, repeat steps 1-3 for each BOM and APPS account.

6

Oracle Cash Management

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Cash Management (CE) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Cash Management with AutoInstall. You should review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Cash Management uses single organization architecture (SOA).

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Cash Management for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Cash Management	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❑ **1.** Back Up Customized Reconciliation Open Interface Objects (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Back Up Customized Reconciliation Open Interface Objects (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Cash Management User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

This step is required only if you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface. The Reconciliation Open Interface objects include the following view and package, which you would have customized to work in your environment:

- CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view)

- CE_999_PKG (package)

AutoInstall recreates these objects and overwrites any customizations that you have made. If you customized any of these objects, be sure to save your customized copies or write a script to recreate them. Instructions to reinstall these objects are listed in the After the Upgrade section of this chapter.

> **Additional Information:**   Reconciliation Open Interface (*Oracle Cash Management User's Guide*)

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cash Management, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Cash Management	
Steps	**Done by**
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Cash Management.	
❏ **1.** Reinstall Customized Reconciliation Open Interface Objects (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ **2.** Install Cash Forecasting Open Interface Objects in Remote Databases (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the feature of Oracle Cash Management listed on the summary lines below the step title.

Step 1: Reinstall Customized Reconciliation Open Interface Objects (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.6, 10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Cash Management User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Reconciliation Open Interface**

This step is required only if you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface. AutoInstall replaced your customized versions of the Reconciliation Open Interface objects, which you backed up in the pre-upgrade steps, with the default ones provided by Oracle Cash Management.

You must now reinstall the customized copies of the Reconciliation Open Interface objects to your database in your APPS account. The following objects need to be installed:

- CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view)
- CE_999_PKG (package)

Step 2: Install Cash Forecasting Open Interface Objects in Remote Databases (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Cash Forecasting Open Interface in Distributed Database Environment**

This step is required only if you are planning to use Cash Forecasting Open Interface in a distributed database environment. You must install the necessary Cash Forecasting objects in each remote database with your Cash Forecasting sources in your APPS schema.

Object	Physical File Name	Directory
CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP (table)	cefextmp.sql	$CE_TOP/sql
CE_FORECAST_EXT_TEMP_N1 (index)	cefextmp.sql	$CE_TOP/sql
CE_FORECAST_REMOTE_SOURCES (package)	cefremts.pls cefremtb.pls	$CE_TOP/admin/sql

Type the following commands:

```
$ cd $CE_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>@remote database @cefextmp.sql
$ cd $CE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>@remote database @cefremts.pls
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>@remote database @cefremtb.pls
```

7

Oracle Common Modules

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Common Modules (AK) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Common Modules with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Common Modules may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Common Modules.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Common Modules are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Unload All Customized Data After Upgrading

Once the upgrade is complete, you can use AKLOAD to upload (restore) your customized data.

> **Additional Information:** Downloading and Uploading, *Oracle Common Modules User's Guide* for your current release

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes and enhancements to Oracle Common Modules may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your product-specific documentation set for complete information about product functionality.

Set Folder Mode

You can set up the display mode for certain AK folder windows to optimize them for use with either the Oracle Product Configurator or Oracle Self-Service Web Applications.

> **Additional Information:**   Setting the Folder Mode, *Oracle Common Modules User's Guide, Release 11*

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Common Modules for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Common Modules	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 2: Perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **1.** Delete AK data in the Global Demo Database (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏ **2.** Check AK Data (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏ **3.** Fix Invalid Data, If Any (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist

Category 2 Steps

Perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Delete AK Data in the Global Demo Database (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

If you are upgrading a Global Demo database from Release 10SC Production 15, Release 10.7, or 10SC Production 16, run the following script to delete AK data:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AK username>/<AK password> @akdelp16.sql
```

Step 2: Check AK Data (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you are upgrading a non-Global Demo database from Production 16 or higher, run the following script to check AK data.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

The script generates akchkp16.rpt, which should be reviewed as a part of the next step.

Step 3: Fix Invalid Data, If Any (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16**

Performed by: **Application Specialist**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you are upgrading a non-Global Demo database from Production 16 or higher, review akchkp16.rpt for any invalid data. Fix the data, if necessary. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to correct invalid data before you upgrade to Release 11. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 until there is no invalid data.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Common Modules, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Common Modules	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 6: Perform the following steps before anyone uses the affected feature.	
❏ **1.** Run Java Program to Upload Customized Data (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ **2.** Back Up the Output Files from the Java Program (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the affected feature.

Step 1: Run Java Program to Upload Customized Data (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16 (or higher)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User must log off this application: **Yes**

Ensure that your java environment is set up correctly before running the program. For example, make sure JAVA_TOP is set correctly, make sure your CLASSPATH is set correctly, and so on.

If you are upgrading a non-Global Demo database from Production 16 or higher, run the following Java commands to upload customized data:

```
$ cd $JAVA_TOP/oracle/apps/ak
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> UPLOAD akcattr.jlt NOUPDATE
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> UPLOAD akcobj.jlt NOUPDATE
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> UPLOAD akcreg.jlt NOUPDATE
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> UPLOAD akcflow.jlt NOUPDATE
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> UPLOAD akcsec.jlt NOUPDATE
```

> **Additional Information:** Downloading and Uploading, *Oracle Common Modules User's Guide* for your release

Step 2: Back Up the Output files from the Java Program

Perform if upgrading from: **10SC Production 16 (or higher)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User must log off this application: **No**

If you are upgrading a system that is not a Global Demo database from Production 16 or higher, make a backup copy of akcattr.jlt, akcobj.jlt, akcreg.jlt, akcflow.jlt, and akcsec.jlt for future reference. These files contain your customized AK data, which was extracted for you by AutoInstall. Without these files, you will lose your customizations for the AK tables.

8

Oracle Cost Management

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Cost Management (CST) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Cost Management with AutoInstall.

The overview explains basic information about Oracle Cost Management that may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Cost Management uses single organization architecture (SOA).

Overview

Oracle Cost Management supports both *standard* and *average* costing methods. The upgrade preparation steps you must perform depend on which type of costing you are using and on whether your organization is structured as *inventory only* or *manufacturing*.

Inventory Only Organizations	Use Oracle Inventory and optionally Oracle Order Entry/Shipping, Purchasing, Bills of Material, or any combination of these products. Inventory only organizations *do not* use Work in Process.
Manufacturing Organizations	Use Oracle Inventory *and* Work in Process. They may also optionally use Oracle Order Entry/Shipping, Purchasing, Bills of Material, or any combination of these products.

Upgrading Standard Costing Systems

Under standard costing systems, predetermined costs are used for valuing inventory and for charging material, resources and overhead, and also period close, job close, and repetitive schedule completion transactions.

Most of the upgrade preparation and finishing steps for Oracle Cost Management are explained in the Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Inventory, Oracle Bills of Material, and Oracle Work in Process sections. For your convenience, this chapter summarizes costing-related upgrade steps in those products.

> **WARNING:** Pay special attention to the upgrade checklists in this chapter to determine which steps you perform in Cost Management and which ones you perform as a part of the upgrade preparation for the associated products. *Do not perform the Cost Management upgrade steps separately if the checklist refers you to another product.*

Upgrading Average Costing Systems

Under average costing systems, the unit cost of an item is the average value of all receipts of that item to inventory, on a per unit basis. Each receipt of material to inventory updates the unit cost of the item received. Issues from inventory use the current average cost as the unit cost.

In all versions of Release 10, and in production releases of Release 10SC prior to Production 16, the only costing method you could use was *inventory only* average costing.

> **Note:** *Inventory only* average costing users should contact Oracle Consulting Services before doing any of the following:
>
> - Continue to use *inventory only* average costing, but take advantage of support for material overhead costing
> - Use manufacturing average costing
> - Use project manufacturing costing

See *Oracle Cost Management Product Update Notes* and *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide* for further information on setting up manufacturing average costing.

> **Note:** There are no After the Upgrade steps for average costing. The Oracle Cost Management CST:Average Costing profile option is automatically set and should not be changed unless you are instructed to do so by Oracle Consulting Services.

Preparing to Upgrade — Standard Costing

This section contains a checklist, which summaries the steps that prepare Oracle Cost Management for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

You will note, however, that the Performed By column name has been changed to Performed In for Oracle Cost Management to indicate the product in which you perform the upgrade steps.

> **Warning:** See the other product chapters for a complete list of these steps and the sequence in which you perform them.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist — Inventory Only

The following steps apply only if you use *inventory only* standard costing.

Oracle Cost Management Inventory Only Standard Costing Upgrades	
Steps	**Performed In**
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cost Management.	
❏ 1. Verify That No Uncosted Transactions Exist (Recommended)	Inventory or Cost Management
❏ 2. Close your Accounting Period (Recommended)	Inventory or Cost Management
❏ 3. Run Inventory Valuation Reports (Recommended)	Inventory

Category 3 Steps — Inventory Only

You should perform these steps before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cost Management.

Step 1: Verify That No Uncosted Transactions Exist (Recommended)

Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Verifying that all transactions entered are costed ensures consistency as you upgrade to Release 11.

If you are upgrading from Release 10 (character-mode):

See View Transactions *(Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See View Pending Transactions *(Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

Step 2: Close your Accounting Period (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Closing your accounting period summarizes costs based on transactions.

If you are upgrading from Release 10 (character mode):

See Period Close *(Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See Period Close *(Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

Step 3: Run Inventory Valuation Reports (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory) or Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In preparation for installing Release 11, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory transactions, run the following reports: Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and, if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In the post-upgrade steps, you will run more inventory valuation reports and compare your Release 10 and Release 11 inventory balances.

If you are upgrading from Release 10 (character mode):

See Inventory Value Report *(Oracle Cost Management Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See Inventory Value Report *(Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist — Manufacturing

The following steps apply only if you use *manufacturing* standard costing.

Oracle Cost Management **Manufacturing Standard Costing Upgrades**	
Steps	**Performed In**
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cost Management.	
❏ **1.** Verify that Resource and Overhead Transactions are Costed (Recommended)	Inventory or Cost Management
❏ **2.** Close Discrete Jobs (Recommended)	Work in Process
❏ **3.** Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)	Work in Process

Category 3 Steps — Manufacturing

You should perform these steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cost Management.

Step 1: Verify that Resource and Overhead Transactions Are Costed (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

You should ensure that all WIP transactions are costed before you upgrade and migrate to the new database and software.

If you are upgrading from Release 10 (character mode):

See View WIP Transactions *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See View Pending Move Transactions and View Pending Resource Transactions *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

Step 2: Close Discrete Jobs (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

To make your upgrade run faster, close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process Release 10 (character mode):

See Close Discrete Jobs *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See Discrete Job Close (*Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10S*C) for more information.

Step 3: Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory) or Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In preparation for upgrading to Release 11, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory and work in process transactions, please run the WIP Value Report for your latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort. In the upgrade finishing steps, you will run more work in process valuation reports and compare your Release 10 and Release 11 work in process balances.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10 (character mode):

See WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

After the Upgrade — Standard Costing

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Cost Management, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

You will note, however, that the Performed By column name has been changed to Performed In for Oracle Cost Management to indicate the product in which you perform the upgrade steps.

> **Warning:** See the other product chapters for a complete list of these steps and the sequence in which you perform them.

After Upgrading Checklist — Manufacturing

The following steps apply only if you use *manufacturing* standard costing.

Oracle Cost Management Manufacturing Standard Costing Upgrade	
Steps	**Performed In**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Cost Management.	
❑ **1.** Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)	Work in Process
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Cost Management.	
❑ **2.** Implement Function Security (Conditionally Required)	System Administration

Category 5 Steps — Manufacturing

You should perform these steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Cost Management.

Step 1: Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory) or Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

User's guide needed: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory and Oracle Work in Process**

After you have completed your Work in Process upgrade, run the Release 11 WIP Value Report for the same accounting period and using the same sorts as the Release 10 report.

Compare the work in process summary totals at the bottom for both reports. The period-to-date and cumulative-to-date summaries should tie. If they do not, the difference is most likely due to additional material, resource, or overhead transactions that occurred between the two report runs.

To identify these transactions, run the following SQL*Plus script. Enter the date and time on which you run the report, using the DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS format. For example, for a report you run on January 20, 1997, at 2:06 PM, you would enter 20-JAN-97 14:06:00.

```
$ cd $WIP_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wipurat.sql
```

The script creates a file called wipurat.lst. You must then manually calculate the value of these transactions, add them to the Release 10 WIP Inventory Value Report that you ran previously, and compare this total to the Release 11 WIP Value Report. If the reports still do not tie, call Oracle Support Services.

> **Additional Information:**   WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11)*

Category 6 Steps — Manufacturing

Perform these steps before anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Cost Management.

Step 2: Implement Function Security (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

In Release 10 character-mode, access to the Assembly Cost Rollup program was governed by the CST:Maintain Cost Privilege profile option. Access to view information, using the Activities, Cost Types, Overheads, Material Subelements, Item Costs, Standard Cost History, Standard Cost Update (for standard cost users only), and Roll Up Assembly Costs (for Bills of Material and Work in Process) forms, was governed by the CST:View Cost Privilege profile option.

In Release 11, these profile options have been removed and access to the corresponding GUI windows must be limited by implementing function security.

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Function Security (*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*); (*Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes*)

9

Oracle EDI Gateway

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle EDI Gateway (EC) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle EDI Gateway with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle EDI Gateway may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle EDI Gateway uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle EDI Gateway.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle EDI Gateway are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Report Your Output Interface Data File Definitions

The upgrade refreshes all EDI Gateway seed data. Your current output interface data file definitions will be lost. The ECEUGR.sql script generates a report of your current definitions before upgrading. You can then use this report after you upgrade to restore your definitions.

Report Your Cross-reference Data Definitions

The upgrade refreshes all EDI Gateway seed data. Your current cross-reference data will be lost. The ECEUGR2.sql script generates a report of your current definitions before upgrading. You can then use this report after you upgrade to restore your definitions.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle EDI Gateway for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle EDI Gateway	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 1. Report Output Interface Data File Definitions	System Administrator
❏ 2. Report Cross-reference Data Definitions	System Administrator

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Report Output Interface Data File Definitions

Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

> **Warning:** The upgrade refreshes all EDI Gateway seed data. Your current output interface data file definitions will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR.sql script generates a report of your current output interface definitions before upgrading. You will be prompted to enter a name for the report. To run ECEUGR.sql, type:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

> **Note:** If you are using multiple sets of books, perform this step for each production installation.

Step 2: Report Cross-reference Data Definitions

Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

> **Warning:** The upgrade refreshes all EDI Gateway seed data. Your current cross-reference data will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR2.sql script generates a report of your current cross-reference definitions before upgrading. You will be prompted to enter a name for the report. To run ECEUGR2.sql, type:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

> **Note:** If you are using multiple sets of books, perform this step for each production installation.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle EDI Gateway, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle EDI Gateway	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform these steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** If You Are Using Oracle Automotive, Run ECECARAS.sql (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator ⁄ Database Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform these steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: If You Are Using Oracle Automotive, Run ECECARAS.sql (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

The ECECARAS.sql script installs EDI transactions that are referenced by the Oracle Automotive module. To run this script, type:

```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECECARAS.sql
```

10

Oracle Financials for Europe

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Financials for Europe (JE) for an upgrade to Release 11. It also lists the steps that you must perform after you upgrade Oracle Financials for Europe with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in this new version of Oracle Financials for Europe and the associated upgrade steps may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Financials for Europe uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

The steps in this chapter are grouped by release and describe how to upgrade to Oracle Financials for Europe for Release 11. Several steps are relevant only to a specific country. *Read all the sections in this chapter before you begin your upgrade.*

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Financials for Europe for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Financials for Europe	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ **1.** Print Norwegian EFT Payment Format Parameters (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **2.** Record Customizations to the Flexible Address Format or Flexible Bank Structure Locations Flexfields (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables/Oracle Payables)
❏ **3.** Complete any Unfinished Interest Invoice Processing Runs (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **4.** Complete Outstanding Oracle Payables Payment Batches (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **5.** Complete any Unfinished Belgian VAT or ESL Processing Runs (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables/Oracle Payables)
❏ **6.** Review Current Localizations Responsibility Users (Conditionally Required)	Systems Administrator
Category 2: You should perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **7.** Ensure Flexible Bank Structure Can Upgrade Correctly (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
Category 3: Perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall.	
❏ **8.** Partition EFT System Formats Information by Operating Unit (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps *before* you receive your new Localizations software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Print Norwegian EFT Payment Format Parameters (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Complete for this country: **Norway**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

The Norwegian EFT parameter setup was replaced in Release 10.6 with new EFT functionality as a part of the Regional Localizations product. You cannot access the original forms once you have upgraded. Follow these steps if you want a record of the EFT parameters that you originally used.

1. Log on to the Norwegian Payables responsibility.

2. Call up the forms as follows:

   - \Navigate Setup Payments BBS

   - \Navigate Setup Payments Datadialog

   - \Navigate Setup Payments Telepay

3. Print each screen (\Screen Print).

Step 2: Record Customizations to the Flexible Address Format or Flexible Bank Structure Localizations Flexfields (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables/Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

The descriptive flexfields required to implement the FAF and FBS functionality were owned by the Regional Localizations functionality in Release 10.4 and 10.5. Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables now own these descriptive flexfields and the old flexfields are deleted in the upgrade process. If you have customized these flexfields, make a record of all customizations before you upgrade.

> **Additional Information:**   Flexible Address Formats/Flexible Bank Structures, *Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10*

Step 3: Complete any Unfinished Interest Invoice Processing Runs (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, or 10.6 (character-mode)**

Complete for this country: **Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Sweden (if you use Interest Invoice functionality)**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Before you upgrade to Release 11, complete any outstanding processing for current Interest Invoice batches with the current forms and reports. The Interest Invoice functionality was changed in Release 10.7. Once your upgrade is complete, you cannot access the old functionality.

> **Additional Information:** AR Interest Invoice, *Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10*

Step 4: Complete Outstanding Oracle Payables Payment Batches (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (in this manual)**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Complete or abort outstanding Oracle Payables payment batches.

Step 5: Complete any Unfinished Belgian VAT or ESL Processing Runs (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.6 (character-mode)**

Complete for this country: **Belgium (and you have applied patch 328093)**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables/Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Belgian Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10**

Users must log off Application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Complete any outstanding processing for VAT or ESL with the current forms or reports before you upgrade to Release 11. The VAT/ESL functionality was changed

for Belgium in Release 10.7. Once your upgrade is complete, you cannot access the old functionality.

> **Additional Information:** Confirm/Cancel VAT Declarations, *Oracle Applications Belgian Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10*

Step 6: Review Current Localizations Responsibility Users (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Systems Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

After you upgrade to Release 11, you will not have access to any character-mode responsibilities. The Users of a Responsibility report can help you determine which localized responsibilities are used at your company.

> **Additional Information:** Managing Oracle Applications Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Category 2 Steps

You should perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 7: Ensure Flexible Bank Structure Can Upgrade Correctly (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10**

Users must log off Applications: **No**

The Flexible Bank Structure (FBS) functionality was incorporated in Oracle Payables for Release 10.6. As part of the upgrade from localized FBS to Oracle Payables FBS,

your bank data was moved from the old-style JGZZ columns and placed into standard Oracle Payables columns. You cannot transfer this data into Oracle Payables unless the Bank Number is unique.

To ensure that your bank numbers are unique, you must run the following script for each of your Oracle Payables schemas:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzckbn.sql
```

This script locates duplicate bank numbers. If it returns any data, you must correct the data before you continue with your upgrade. Follow these steps to correct the data:

1. Log on to the localized Oracle Payables responsibility for your country.

2. Navigate to the Set Up Bank Information form (\Navigate Setup Banks).

3. Modify the information in your Flexible Bank Structure to remove the duplicate information.

> **Additional Information:** Flexible Bank Structures, *Oracle Applications Regional Localizations Reference Manual, Release 10*

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall.

Step 8: Partition EFT System Formats Information by Operating Unit (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.6, 10.7**

Complete for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off Applications: **Yes**

> **Note:** This step is required only if the Multi-Org functionality is installed and used.

The JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table is partitioned for Multi-Org (by operating unit) during the upgrade to Release 11. This table has been a part of Oracle

Applications Regional Localizations since Release 10.4.2, and there may be EFT-specific setup data that is relevant to specific countries.

If Multi-Org is used prior to the Release 11 upgrade, existing data must be assigned to an appropriate operating unit for it to be accessible. Assigning the data is a two-step process. Both steps must be performed for each installation of Oracle Payables.

1. Add the required ORG_ID column to the JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table by running the following script:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

2. Partition the existing data by operating unit by running the following script once for every combination of Country Code and EFT Type that exists in the database until each entry is assigned to an operating unit:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Financials for Europe, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After the Upgrade Checklist

Oracle Financials for Europe	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE you use Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Recreate French Income Tax Types (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **2.** Upgrade Descriptive Flexfield Dates to Use the New AOL Date Validation (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **3.** Recreate Netherlands Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **4.** Recreate Finnish Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE you use a specific application.	
❏ **5.** Upgrade Localizations Responsibilities (Recommended)	Systems Administrator
❏ **6.** Set Up EFT System Format Information (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **7.** Remove Obsolete Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **8.** Enable the Swift Code field in the Enter Banks Field (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **9.** Enable the Tax Code in the Receipts Window (Germany) (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **10.** Create Italian Inventory Tax Types (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform these steps before you use Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Recreate French Income Tax Types (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Complete for this country: **France**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for France**

If you used French Localizations prior to the upgrade, you must recreate the French income tax types that were removed as a part of the upgrade process. To do this, use adpatch to run the following driver file:

`$JE_TOP/admin/driver/jefrtxtp.drv`

> **Additional Information:** Defining a Responsibility, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 2: Upgrade Descriptive Flexfield Dates to Use the New AOL Date Validation (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Regional Localizations**

The validation for date fields within Regional Localizations Descriptive Flexfields was changed in Release 11 so that you can correctly store and retrieve date information in descriptive flexfield attribute columns, regardless of the language that was used at entry time. Using adpatch, run the following driver file to upgrade date values in the flexfield columns:

`$JG_TOP/admin/driver/jgzzupgd.drv`

Because the language that you use determines the way dates are entered, you should run this driver file once for each language that is installed.

Step 3: Recreate Netherlands Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All character-mode releases (with Netherlands Localizations installed)**

Complete for this country: **Netherlands**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for European Region (EMEA) User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for the Netherlands**

If you used Netherlands Localizations prior to the upgrade, you must recreate lookup codes that were removed for this product during the upgrade. Using adpatch, run this driver file to recreate the Netherlands lookup codes:

```
$JE_TOP/admin/driver/jenlaplc.drv
```

> **Additional Information:**   Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT), *Oracle Financials for European Region (EMEA) User's Guide*

Step 4: Recreate Finnish Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All character-mode releases (with Finnish Localizations installed)**

Complete for this country: **Finland**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Finland**

If you used Finnish Localizations prior to the upgrade, you must recreate lookup codes that were removed for this product during the upgrade. Using adpatch, run this driver file to recreate the Finnish lookup codes:

```
$JE_TOP/admin/driver/jefiaplc.drv
```

> **Additional Information:**   AutoPatch Utility, *Oracle Applications Installation*

Category 5 Steps

Perform these steps before you use Oracle Applications European Localizations.

Step 5: Upgrade Localizations Responsibilities (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **Any character-mode release**

Complete for this country: **All**

Performed by: **Systems Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Regional or European Localizations with new responsibilities**

Release 11 is GUI-only, so all character-mode responsibilities will become obsolete when you upgrade. Obsolete character-mode responsibilities in Release 10.5 (and earlier) are as follows:

Table 10–1   Obsolete Character-mode Responsibilities (Release 10.5 and earlier)

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...	for the following...
Oracle Regional Localizations	Shared Local General Ledger, Payables, Receivables, Assets, and Purchasing.	N/A
Oracle European Localizations	Local General Ledger, Payables, Receivables, Assets, and Purchasing	Spanish, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Austrian

Obsolete character-mode responsibilities for Release 10.6 and 10.7 are as follows:

Table 10–2   Obsolete Character-mode Responsibilities (Release 10.6 and 10.7)

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...	for the following...
Oracle Payables	Local Payables	Austrian, Belgian, Danish, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Netherlands, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, Swiss, U.K.
Oracle Receivables	Local Receivables	Austrian, Belgian, Danish, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Netherlands, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, Swiss, U.K.
Oracle General Ledger	Local General Ledger	Austrian, Belgian, Danish, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Netherlands, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish, Swiss, U.K.
Oracle Assets	Local Assets	German, Italian
Oracle Order Entry	Local Order Entry and Inventory	Italian

Existing GUI responsibilities are the same as Release 11 responsibilities except that the term GUI was removed from the title. This change is automatically handled by the upgrade.

Table 10–3   GUI Responsibilities (from Release 10.6 and 10.7)

Old GUI Responsibility	New in Release 11
Austrian Localizations GUI	Austrian Localizations
Belgian Localizations GUI	Belgian Localizations
N/A	Czech Localizations
Danish Localizations GUI	Danish Localizations
Finnish Localizations GUI	Finnish Localizations
French Localizations GUI	French Localizations
German Localizations GUI	German Localizations
N/A	Hungarian Localizations
N/A	Israeli Localizations
Italian Localizations GUI	Italian Localizations
Netherlands Localizations GUI	Netherlands Localizations
Norwegian Localizations GUI	Norwegian Localizations
N/A	Polish Localizations
N/A	Portuguese Localizations
Spanish Localizations GUI	Spanish Localizations
Swedish Localizations GUI	Swedish Localizations
Swiss Localizations GUI	Swiss Localizations
N/A	Turkish Localizations

If you upgrade from a character-mode release, the character-mode responsibilities are automatically disabled and no longer available after the upgrade is complete. You must understand the functional needs of users at your company and re-implement responsibilities as though for a fresh install.

Step 6: Set Up EFT System Format Information (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Complete for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland**

The JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table was partitioned by operating unit (for Multi-Org) during the upgrade to Release 11. For each Localization that is installed, you must review the EFT System Formats for each country and verify that they are correct. Set up formats when necessary. Refer to your country-specific manual for more information.

Step 7: Remove Obsolete Lookup Codes (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Complete for this country: **Sweden**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Sweden**

Using adpatch, run this driver file to remove obsolete lookup codes:

`$JG_TOP/admin/driver/jgzzdlqc.drv`

> **Additional Information:**   AutoPatch Utility, *Oracle Applications Installation*

Step 8: Enable the Swift Code Field in the Enter Banks Window (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **Any character-mode release**

Complete for this country: **Denmark, Finland, Norway, or Switzerland**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Switzerland**

Using adpatch, run this driver file to enable the Swift Code field in the Payables Enter Banks window:

`$JG_TOP/admin/driver/jgzzswft.drv`

> **Additional Information:**   AutoPatch Utility (*Oracle Applications Installation Manual, UNIX Edition*)

Step 9: Enable the Tax Code in the Receipts Window (Germany) (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All character-mode releases (with Germany Localizations installed)**

Complete for this country: **Germany**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Germany**

If you used Oracle Financials for Germany prior to the upgrade, enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window. Using adpatch, run this driver file:

`$JE_TOP/admin/driver/jedetcfe.drv`

> **Additional Information:** AutoPatch Utility, *Oracle Applications Installation*

Step 10: Create Italian Inventory Tax Types (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All character-mode releases (with Italy Localizations installed)**

Complete for this country: **Italy**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications Localizations for Italy**

If you used Oracle Financials for Italy prior to the upgrade, create additional Tax Types for Oracle Inventory. Using adpatch, run this driver file:

`$JE_TOP/admin/driver/jeitmtlt.drv`

> **Additional Information:** AutoPatch Utility, *Oracle Applications Installation*

11

Oracle Financials for Latin America

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Financials for Latin America (JL) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Financials for Latin America with AutoInstall.

> **Note:** Oracle Financials for Latin America uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Preparing to Upgrade

The steps in this section are organized by country, release, and product and apply only if you are upgrading from:

- Oracle Financials (GL) for Argentina Release 10.5 to Release 11

- Oracle Financials (GL, AP, AR, PO, and INV) for Brazil Release 10.5 to Release 11

- Oracle Financials (GL) for Brazil Release 10.7 to Release 11

Consult your manager if you have a different installation.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Financials for Latin America	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **1.** Review Current Responsibility Users (Brazil and Argentina)	System Administrator

Oracle Financials for Latin America	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **2.** Approve All Invoices (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **3.** Post All Invoices/Payments to General Ledger (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **4.** Pay All Consolidated Invoices (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **5.** Complete Unfinished Interest Invoice Processing Runs (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **6.** Complete and Print all Invoices (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **7.** Complete and Post all Invoices (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **8.** Back Up Obsolete Profiles (Brazil)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
❏ **9.** Import All Outstanding Bank Returns and Correct All Document Numbers (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables
❏ **10.** Populate Release 10.5 Attributes That Are Mandatory in Release 11 Oracle Receivables (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **11.** Replace the Company Name in System Options Form (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **12.** Create Obsolete Tax Code for Previous Transactions (Brazil)	Database Administrator
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Financials for Latin America.	
❏ **13.** Create Missing Columns for the Upgrade Scripts (Brazil)	Database Administrator/System Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Financials for Latin America software.

> **warning:** For Brazilian 10.5 installations, the upgrade procedure loads balances and journals in the proper tables from the subledger transactions. Because no balances and transactions for the previous periods/year are shown in the subledger reports (Auxiliary Daily Book and Auxiliary Ledger Book), the purge routine should not be executed before the upgrade is completed, otherwise no balances and transactions for previous periods/year will be shown in these subledger reports. As a consequence, the subledger balances will not reconcile with General Ledger.

Step 1: Review Current Responsibility Users (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Argentina, Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5 or 10.7**

Complete for this product: **All**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

After you upgrade to Release 11, you will not have access to any character-mode responsibilities. The Users of a Responsibility report can help you determine which localized responsibilities are used at your company.

> **Additional Information:** Upgrade Responsibilities in the After the Upgrade section of this chapter.

Step 2: Approve all Your Invoices (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Approve any outstanding processing for current invoices before you upgrade to Release 11. The Withholding Tax functionality was incorporated in Oracle Payables.

> **Attention:** Complete this step only if you are using Withholding Tax functionality.

Step 3: Post all Invoices/Payments to General Ledger (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Post any outstanding processing for current invoices and payments to General Ledger before you upgrade to Release 11.

> **Attention:** Complete this step only if you are using the Consolidated Billing and Tax Treatment functionalities.

Step 4: Pay All Consolidated Invoices (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Complete any outstanding processing for current invoice batches, including all Consolidated Invoices. The Consolidated Billing functionality was changed for tracking purposes only.

> **Attention:** Complete this step only if you are using the Consolidated Billing functionality.

Step 5: Complete Unfinished Interest Processing Runs (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Complete any outstanding processing for current Interest Invoice batches. The Interest Invoice functionality was changed, and you can now enter interest parameters at supplier and supplier site levels.

> **Attention:**   Complete this step only if you use Interest Invoice functionality.

Step 6: Complete and Print all Invoices (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Complete any outstanding processing for current invoices before you upgrade to Release 11. Print all current invoices that have not yet been printed.

> **Attention:**   Complete this step only if you use Billing functionality.

Step 7: Complete and Post all Invoices (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Complete any outstanding processing for current invoices and post them to General Ledger before you upgrade to Release 11.

> **Attention:**   Complete this step only if you use Latin tax functionality in Release 11, and you have used tax functionality in Release 10.5.

Step 8: Back Up Obsolete Profiles (Recommended)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

AutoInstall will remove obsolete profiles. Before the upgrade, you should write down your current profile options so that you can set them properly after the upgrade. Navigate to the System Profiles window in the System Administrator responsibility and query for the profiles.

Old Profile	New Profile
JLBR ACOES VENCIMENTO	JLBR Payment Action
JLBR CALENDARIO	JLBR Calendar Name
JLBR MANDATORIO	JLBR Automatically Change Date
JLBR LOCAL PAGAMENTO	JLBR Payment Location

The following profiles are also obsolete:

- JLBR FERIADOS LOCAIS

- JLBR FERIADOS NACIONAIS

These profiles are obsolete and are being replaced by new fields. See Step 8 in Category 5 for details.

- JLBR METODO PAGAMENTO NDJ

- JLBR TIPO TRANSACAO NDJ

- JLBR BATCH SOURCE ID NDJ

> **Additional Information:**   Setting Up Brazilian Payables, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 9: Import All Outstanding Bank Returns and Correct All Document Numbers

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Import any outstanding bank returns from the JL_BR_RETORNOS_INTERFACE interface table and correct all document numbers for rejected records using the *Correcao de Documentos do Bordero* screen.

Step 10: Populate Release 10.5 Attributes That Are Mandatory in Release 11 Receivables

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: ***Localizacao Brasil Vrs. 1.02*** **(Brazil Localization)**

Be sure that you populate the following fields, which were optional in Release 10.5. They are mandatory in Release 11.

Form Name	Field Name
Definicao de Bancos de Remessa	Cobranca Bancaria - Formato de Saida Cobranca Bancaria - Nome do Programa Desconto Bancario - Formato de Saida Desconto Bancario - Nome do Programa Ocorrencias Bancarias - Nome Programa Relatorio Ocorrencias Bancarias - Nome Programa Arquivo Cod. Empresa no Banco
Definicao de Bancos de Remessa	Cod. Banco Cod. Agencia
Manutencao de Perfis de Cliente	Envia Instrucoes Protesto Envia Instrucoes Juros
Definicao de Classes de Perfil de Cliente	Envia Instrucoes Protesto Envia Instrucoes Juros
Definicao de Opcoes de Sistema	Nome da Empresa

Form Name	Field Name
Entrada de Inform. Sobre Endereco do Cliente	Tipo Inscricao
Definicao de Enderecos Para Remessa	Bal. Segment
Definicao de Tipos de Transacao	Tipo de Documento

Step 11: Replace the Company Name in System Options Form
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Localizacao Brasil Vrs. 1.02 (Brazil Localization)**

Replace the company name with the accounting balancing segment in the *Nome da Empresa* field in the *Definicao de Opcoes de Sistema* form. In Release 10.5, the company name is populated in the *Nome da Empresa* field. In Release 11, you must enter the accounting balancing segment in this field.

Step 12: Create Obsolete Tax Code for Previous Transactions
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Create a tax code to be used to upgrade your existing transaction data. Create the record using the Define Tax Codes and Rates form. Enter this values:

Tax Code	:OBS
Tax Type	VAT
Tax Rate	:0.00
Start Date	:01-JAN-1900
End Date	:<Null>

> **Additional Information:** Define Tax Codes and Rates, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

Category 3 Steps

You can perform these steps just before you run AutoInstall. Be sure no one is using the Oracle Applications system.

Step 13: Create Missing Columns for the Upgrade Scripts (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **All**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

User must log off the application: **Yes**

Run the following script to create columns that are missing in 10.5 localized tables.

```
$  cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$  sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @jlbradco.sql <AP username>\
   <AP password> <AR username> <AR password> <PO username> <PO password>\
   <INV username> <INV password> <HR username> <HR password>
```

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for *each* product installation.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade your Oracle Financials for Latin America, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information about step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Financials for Latin America	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Financials for Latin America.	
❏ 1. Upgrade Your Inflation Adjustment Indexes (Argentina)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)

Oracle Financials for Latin America	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ 2. Upgrade Table Data (Brazil)	Database Administrator
❏ 3. Remove Obsolete Lookup Types (Brazil)	Database Administrator
❏ 4. Remove Obsolete Lookup Codes (Brazil)	Database Administrator
❏ 5. Update Mandatory Columns (Brazil)	System Administrator/ Application Specialist (Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables)
❏ 6. Rebuild Your Calendar (Brazil)	System Administrator/ Application Specialist (Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables)
❏ 7. Re-assign the Business Day Calendar Profiles (Brazil)	System Administrator/ Application Specialist (Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables)
❏ 8. Define Interest Parameters in System Options (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ 9. Remove Obsolete Data (Brazil)	Database Administrator
❏ 10. Assign Non-Recoverable Accounting to Your AICMS Tax Type (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 11. Create New Withholding Tax Groups (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 12. Check Information in Payables Options Window (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 13. Enable Automatic Collection Document Association for Each Invoice (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 14. Enter Fiscal and Tax Information for Each Supplier Site (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables or Oracle Purchasing)
❏ 15. Enter State Code for Each Location (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables or Oracle Purchasing)
❏ 16. Transfer Fiscal Classification Codes (Brazil)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
❏ 17. Manually Register and Update Fiscal Classification Codes (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)
❏ 18. Update Inventory Items Table (Brazil)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
❏ 19. Manually Associate Fiscal Classification Code with Inventory Items (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)
❏ 20. Update PO Lines Table (Brazil)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
❏ 21. Manually Correct the Transaction Nature for Purchase Order Lines (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)

Oracle Financials for Latin America	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **22.** Complete the Tax Setup (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)
❏ **23.** Create New Bank Accounts for Suppliers (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **24.** Enter Values for Mandatory Fields (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **25.** Upgrade your Customized Remittance Batch Formatting Programs (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **26.** Upgrade your Customized Payment Formatting Programs (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ **27.** Define Mandatory Accounts that Are Needed for Bank Transfer and Interest Functionality (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **28.** Define Collection Method for Receipt Classes (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **29.** Define Freight Carrier Address and Inscription Numbers (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **30.** Associate Imported Transaction Sources with manual Transaction Sources (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **31.** Define Operation Fiscal Codes (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **32.** Enter Contributor Type for Each Customer (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **33.** Enter Establishment Type for Organization Locations (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **34.** Create New Tax Categories (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **35.** Assign Tax Categories to Each VAT Tax Code (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **36.** Create Fiscal Classification Codes (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **37.** Enter/Update the Fiscal Classification Code and Transaction Nature for Items (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **38.** Enter the Fiscal Classification Code and Transaction Number for Memo Lines (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **39.** Enter a Tax Code for Transaction Types (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **40.** Update Sales Orders (Brazil)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Order Entry)
❏ **41.** Update Invoices (Brazil)	Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)/Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Financials for Latin America.

Step 1: Upgrade Your Inflation Adjustment Indexes (Recommended)

Complete for this country: **Argentina**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual needed: **No**

AutoInstall does not upgrade the inflation adjustment indexes. Because index values are stored on a period basis and should instead be stored with a range of dates, you must specify a set of books ID to use during the upgrade. Run the following script to upgrade your inflation adjustment indexes.

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlarsup2.sql <JL username> \
 <set of books id>
```

> **Note:**   During this upgrade step, the information stored in JL_AR_
> A_AXI_INDEXES.index_id will be migrated to FA_PRICE_
> INDEX.price_index_name. Because JL_AR_A_AXI_INDEXES.name
> does not have an upgrade path, the column will be removed.

Step 2: Upgrade Table Data

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following scripts once for each APPS schema to upgrade all table data:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrtrdi.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrupgr.sql <AP username> \
 <AP password> <AR username> <AR password> <AOL username> <AOL password> \
 <APPS username> <APPS password> <INV username> <INV password> \
 <PO username> <PO password> <HR username> <HR password> <JL username> \
 <JL password>
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrtren.sql
```

> **Note:** If you are using multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for each product installation.

Step 3: Remove Obsolete Lookup Types (Recommended)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following script once to remove obsolete lookup types.

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrsup4.sql <AP username>\
 <AP password> <AR username> <AR password> <PO username> <PO password>
```

The script removes obsolete lookup types from the following tables:

Table	Obsolete Lookup Types
PO_LOOKUP_TYPES	TIPO CONTRIBUINTE OBJETIVO ITEM
AP_LOOKUP_TYPES	METODO DE ASSOCIACAO CODIGO MORA BLOQUETO STATUS ACAO ASSOCIACAO ERRO IMPORTACAO BLOQUETOS INSCRIPTION_TYPE
AR_LOOKUPS	TIPO_GL_DATE FORMATO_ENVIO METODO_COBRANCA OCORRENCIA_BANCARIA_REMESSA OCORRENCIA_BANCARIA_RETORNO DOCUMENT_TYPE TIPO_INSTRUCAO_COBRANCA TIPO_OCORRENCIA_BANCARIA ERROS_RETORNO_BANCARIO DESTINO_OCORRENCIA_BANCARIA CONTABILIZACAO ENVIO_OCORRENCIA_BANCARIA ACRESCIMO_VALOR_PAGAMENTO ADJUST_REASON

Step 4: Remove Obsolete Lookup Codes (Recommended)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following script once to remove your obsolete lookup codes.

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrsup5.sql <AP username>\
 <AP password> <AR username> <AR password> <PO username> <PO password> \
 <GL username> <GL password>
```

The script removes obsolete lookup codes from these tables:

PO_LOOKUP_CODES   MFG_LOOKUPS

GL_JE_CATEGORIES   AP_LOOKUP_CODES

AR_LOOKUPS

Step 5: Update Mandatory Columns (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)/Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must choose the Brazilian General Information responsibility. Then navigate to General > Company > Define to access the Define Company Information form. Query all records and enter the city, state, country, and zip code. This information is mandatory in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:** Define Company Information, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 6: Rebuild Your Calendar (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Working Day Calendar was redesigned for Release 11. After your upgrade, you must create a new calendar and define your Local/National Holidays using the Working Day Calendar window.

> **Additional Information:**   Business Day Calendar, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 7: Re-assign the Business Day Calendar Profiles (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables or Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables and Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Business Day Calendar was redesigned for Release 11. You must manually assign the profiles related to your new calendar. You can build a new calendar using the Brazilian General Information responsibility. Navigate to General > Calendar > Calendars to access the Workday Calendar window. Create a new calendar using the following profiles:

JLBR Automatically Change Date   JLBR Calendar Name

JLBR Payment Action   JLBR Payment Location

> **Additional Information:**   Defining a Business Day Calendar, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 8: Define Interest Parameters in System Options (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Interest functionality has been redesigned for Release 11. After you upgrade, you must assign values for the following Release 10.5 interest profiles to the new related fields in the System Options window. You saved these obsolete profile values in Step 8 while preparing for the upgrade.

The profiles in Release 10.5 have these related fields in Release 11:

Release 10.5 Profiles	Release 11 Fields
JLBR_BATCH_SOURCE_ID_NDJ	Interest Batch Source
JLBR_METODO_PAGAMENTO_NDJ	Interest Receipt Method
JLBR_TIPO_TRANSACAO_NDJ	Interest Transaction Type

> **Additional Information:** Defining System Options, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 9: Remove Obsolete Data (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Inventory**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following scripts once to remove obsolete lookup codes:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbriu01.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbriu02.sql
```

These scripts remove obsolete lookup codes from these tables:

- MTL_ITEM_ATTRIBUTES
- MTL_ATTR_APPL_DEPENDENCIES

Step 10: Assign Non-Recoverable Accounting to Your ICMS Tax Type (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

After your upgrade, you must assign a new non-recoverable accounting flexfield for each ICMS Tax type you entered.

Step 11: Create the New Withholding Tax Groups (Recommended)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**

If you use Withholding Tax Groups, you must create a withholding tax group for your withholding tax names. After your upgrade, you must assign a Withholding Tax Group for each new Withholding Tax Name.

> **Additional Information:** Define Withholding Tax Groups (*Oracle Payables User's Guide)*

Step 12: Check Information in Payables Options Window (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must make sure you have enabled the bank collection feature and checked to see if the city to be considered for the business day calendar is the right one. These two attributes are in the Bank Transfer Information window of the Payables Options form. AutoInstall automatically defaults to the city defined in the Company

Information window that matches the current set of books and the accounting balancing segment defined in Release 10.5.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Bank Transfer Information—Setting Up Brazilian Payables and Defining Company Information, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 13: Enable Automatic Collection Document Association for Each Invoice (Recommended)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must make sure you have enabled the automatic collection document association feature in the Additional Information window of the Invoice Workbench form. AutoInstall automatically copies the value defined in the Payables Options window.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Bank Transfer Information—Setting Up Brazilian Payables and Entering Invoice Workbench Information, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 14: Enter Fiscal and Tax Information for Each Supplier Site (Recommended)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must make sure you have entered valid options for the Inscription Type and the Contributor Type in the Additional Information window of the Supplier form.

AutoInstall automatically copies the value defined in Release 10.5. You have to manually check to see that the defaulted Contributor Type is a valid lookup code.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Supplier Site Information—Setting Up Payables or Purchasing, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 15: Enter State Code for Each Location (Recommended)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must enter a valid state for the location address in the Location Address window of the Location form. You have to manually check to see that the defaulted state is a valid lookup code.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Fiscal Information for Locations—Setting Up Purchasing and Defining Lookup Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 16: Transfer Fiscal Classification Codes (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following script once to transfer Fiscal Classification codes from the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table to the JL_BR_PO_FISC_CLASSIF_ALL table:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbruu15.sql
```

Step 17: Manually Register and Update Fiscal Classification Codes (Recommended)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

To register/review all the existing Fiscal Classification codes that your company uses, choose Setup > Tax > Fiscal Classifications in the Brazilian Oracle Purchasing responsibility.

Step 18: Update Inventory Items and Item Templates Tables
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Inventory**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run the following script once to update fiscal information related to Inventory Items and existing Item Templates:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbriu03.sql
```

Step 19: Manually Associate the Fiscal Classification Code and IPI Tax Exception with Inventory Items
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Review and update the Fiscal Classification Code and eventual IPI Tax Exception for every inventory item in every inventory organization. Start with the Master Inventory Organization and then switch to the others. Choose Items > Master Items in the Brazilian Oracle Purchasing responsibility.

Step 20: Update PO Lines Table
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Database Administrator /System Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **No**

Run this script once to upgrade the PO_LINES_ALL table with fiscal information:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbruu11.sql
```

Step 21: Manually Correct the Transaction Nature for Purchase Order Lines (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

During the upgrade of the Shipments table (PO_LINE_LOCATIONS_ALL), all PO shipments that belong to the same PO line (and have different ITEM OBJECTIVES) were recorded in a temporary table called JL_BR_PO_TRX_NATURE_TMP. Since, in Release 11, we are transferring this data from PO shipment level to PO line level, you must review the cases where this situation has occurred.

List the contents of the JL_BR_PO_TRX_NATURE_TMP table by running the following script:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbruu18.sql
```

This script will generate a spool file called jlbruu18.lst. You can either open or print the file to see the following information:

PO Number	Vendor
Line Number	Item
Shipment Number	Shipment Location
Item Objective	

Use this report to identify Release 10.5 lines with multiple Item Objectives. Then, review and manually correct these cases. In Release 11, the item utilization is stored in the Transaction Nature field.

Since this information is at the PO line level, you can create another PO line, transfer the shipment from the previous one to this new one, and associate the appropriate Transaction Nature to the item. To perform these steps, choose Purchase Orders > Purchase Orders from the Brazilian Oracle Purchasing responsibility.

Step 22: Complete the Tax Setup (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Purchasing**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Complete the tax setup for Oracle Purchasing.

> **Additional Information:** Refer to the *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide* for information about the required steps.

Step 23: Create New Bank Accounts for Suppliers (Recommended)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**

Complete this step if you enable the multiple supplier banks functionality and if you previously defined banks or branches for your supplier.

> **Additional Information:** Payables Options and Banks, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*

Step 24: Enter Values for Mandatory Fields
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Enter valid value for the Print Invoice Immediately field in the Additional Information window of the System Options form.

> **Additional Information:** Defining System Options, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 25: Upgrade your Customized Remittance Batch Formatting Programs

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Upgrade any customized remittance batch formatting report programs that you have for Release 10.5. Copy your upgraded reports to the $JL_TOP/reports directory. Because the file names are already registered as Automatic Receipt Programs during the upgrade, you should not change the file names of these report files or register the file names again.

Step 26: Upgrade your Customized Payment Formatting Programs

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Payables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Upgrade any customized payment formatting report programs that you have for Release 10.5. Copy your upgraded reports to the $JL_TOP/reports directory. Because the file names are already registered as Payment Programs during the upgrade, you should not change the file names of these report files or register the file names again.

Step 27: Define Mandatory Accounts Needed for Bank Transfer and Interest Functionality

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

In the Global Receipt Method Accounts window, enter values for mandatory account fields for all the payment methods.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Global Receipt Method Accounts (*Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*)

Step 28: Define Collection Method for Receipt Classes (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must assign a value for the Collection Method field in the Additional Information window of the Receipt Classes form. This field is required only when the value of the field Creation Method for your receipt class is Manual.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Receipt Classes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 29: Define Freight Carrier Address and Inscription Numbers

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must assign values for the Address, City, State, Inscription Type, and State Inscription fields in the Additional Information window of the Freight Carriers form.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Freight Carriers, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 30: Associate Imported Transaction Sources with Manual Transaction Sources (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must associate an imported transaction source with each manual transaction source by entering a value for the Invoice Sub-Series field in the Additional Information window of the Transaction Sources form. Oracle Receivables then generates transaction numbers of manually entered transactions using sub-series of imported transaction sources.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining Invoice Sub-Series, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 31: Define Operation Fiscal Codes
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must define operation fiscal codes used by your company in the Operation Fiscal Codes window.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining Operation Fiscal Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 32: Enter Contributor Type for Each Customer
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Enter a valid value for the Contributor Type field in the Additional Information window of the Define Customers form. To define additional Contributor Types, use the Define Lookup Codes form in the Brazilian General Responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Customers and Defining Lookup Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 33: Enter Establishment Type for Organization Locations

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

For each organization location, enter a valid value for the Establishment Type field in the Additional Information window of the Location form. To define additional Establishment Types, use the Define Lookup Codes form in the Brazilian General responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Information for Locations and Defining Lookup Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 34: Create New Tax Categories (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Create additional tax categories, if necessary, using the Latin Tax Categories form in the Brazilian Oracle Receivables responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** Latin Tax Categories, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 35: Assign Tax Categories to Each VAT Tax Code

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

To each tax code that has a tax type of VAT, assign a tax category in the Additional Information window of the Define Tax Codes & Rates Window form.

> **Additional Information:**   Define Tax Codes and Rates, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 36: Create Fiscal Classification Codes
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

Create the fiscal classification codes (that you want to specify for your invoiceable items) using the Latin Fiscal Classifications form in the Brazilian Oracle Receivables responsibility.

> **Additional Information:**   Latin Fiscal Classifications, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guid*e

Step 37: Enter/Update the Fiscal Classification Code and Transaction Nature for Items (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

For each item that is invoiceable, update the Inventory Application to AR and enter valid values for the Fiscal Classification and Transaction Nature fields in the Additional Information window of the Define Items form. To define additional

Transaction Nature codes, use the Define Lookup Codes form in the Brazilian General responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** Define Master Items, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 38: Enter the Fiscal Classification Code and Transaction Nature for Memo Lines

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

For each memo line, enter valid values for the Fiscal Classification and Transaction Nature fields in the Additional Information window of the Define Memo Lines form. To define additional Transaction Nature codes, use the Define Lookup Codes form in the Brazilian General responsibility.

> **Additional Information:** Define Memo Lines, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 39: Enter a Tax Code for Transaction Types

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide and Implementation Guide for Brazil**

For each transaction type, enter a valid value for the Tax Code field in the Additional Information window of the Define Transaction Types form. Or, you may enter a tax group if you have already defined tax groups using the Latin Tax Groups form.

Step 40: Update Sales Orders

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Order Entry**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Order Entry)/Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must assign values for the Tax Code field in the Orders window. In addition, you must assign values for the Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Codes, and Transaction Nature fields in the Additional Information window of the Sales Orders form. Before you enter the field values, make sure that you have defined lookup codes for the Item Transaction Nature lookup type in the Lookup Codes window and the fiscal classification codes you need using the Latin Fiscal Classifications form. Also, be sure that you have defined the tax code OBS (see Step 12 in the Before the Upgrade section).

You can use the following script to populate the Tax Code, Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Nature Code fields with default values for all your Sales Order lines. You need to specify the default values for Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Nature Code when running the script.

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrru25.sql <Operation Fiscal
Code>\
  <Fiscal Classification Code> <Transaction Nature Code>
```

> **Additional Information:** Entering Sales Order Information and Defining Lookup Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 41: Update Invoices

Complete for this country: **Brazil**

Complete for this release: **10.5**

Complete for this product: **Oracle Receivables**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Receivables)/Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide**

You must assign values for the Tax Code field in the Lines window. You must also assign values for the Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Codes, and Transaction Nature Code fields in the Additional Information window from a transaction line of the Transactions form. Before you enter these values, make sure

that you have defined lookup codes for the item Transaction Nature lookup type in the Lookup Codes window and the fiscal classification codes you need using the Latin Fiscal Classifications form. Also, be sure that you have defined the tax code OBS (see Step 12 in the Before the Upgrade section). You *must* enter the value OBS for the Tax Code field in the Lines window of the Transactions form.

You can use the following script to populate the Tax Code, Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Nature code fields with default values for all your Invoice lines. You need to specify the default values for Operation Fiscal Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Nature Code when running the script.

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlbrru26.sql <Operation Fiscal Code>\
 <Fiscal Classification Code> <Transaction Nature Code>

> **Additional Information:**   Entering Invoice Information and Defining Lookup Codes, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

12

Oracle FlexBuilder

This chapter describes how to replace the process of building Accounting Flexfield code combinations with FlexBuilder with one that builds these code combinations with the Account Generator using Workflow. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Flexbuilder with AutoInstall.

The overview contains important information about the Account Generator and lists some upgrade steps that require special attention. Application Specialists for the affected products should review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

Overview

In Release 10, several Oracle Applications products used FlexBuilder to derive account numbers for certain account transactions. In Release 11, FlexBuilder has been replaced by the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

This transition from FlexBuilder to the Account Generator affects only the following products:

Oracle Assets   Oracle Order Entry

Oracle Projects   Oracle Purchasing

Oracle Receivables

> **Additional Information:** Overview of the Account Generator,
> *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide, Release 11* and *Oracle Workflow Guide*

Before the upgrade, you need to review the way each product uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Consider whether the default Account Generator processes are appropriate for each product, and appropriate for each set of books that uses a unique Accounting Flexfield structure. For each structure and set of books, you can choose:

- to use the default Account Generator process

- to use the previously customized Release 10 FlexBuilder assignment created for Release 11 in the upgrade process

- to customize the default Account Generator process

This choice determines which After the Upgrade steps your upgrade team must perform.

Important Information About the Account Generator

The following table shows the Account Generator item types and default processes provided in Oracle Flexbuilder, which you can view and modify using Oracle Workflow. Refer to the Account Generator in the Oracle <product name> sections in the individual product user's guides for more information.

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
Oracle Assets	FA Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Order Entry	Generate Cost of Goods Sold Account	Generate Default Account
Oracle Projects	Project-Related Supplier Invoice Account Generation	Generate Default Account
Oracle Purchasing	PO Accrual Account Generator	Generate Default Accrual Account
	PO Budget Account Generator	Generate Default Budget Account
	PO Charge Account Generator	Generate Default Charge Account
	PO Variance Account Generator	Generate Default Variance Account
	PO Requisition Accrual Account Generator	Generate Default Accrual Account
	PO Requisition Budget Account Generator	Generate Default Budget Account
	PO Requisition Charge Account Generator	Generate Default Charge Account

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
	PO Requisition Variance Account Generator	Generate Default Variance Account
Oracle Receivables	AR Substitute Balancing Segment	Replace Balancing Segment

> **Additional Information:**   Account Generator in Oracle Assets, *Oracle Assets User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Order Entry, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Projects, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Purchasing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Receivables, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Deciding How to Upgrade to Account Generator

There are three ways to upgrade the Account Generator.

Use a Default Account Generator Process. If the default Account Generator meets your accounting requirements, you can choose to use the Account Generator default processes provided by each product that previously used FlexBuilder. No upgrade step or setup steps are required to use the default. The default processes can also be updated later as your needs change.

Migrate Customized Business Rules. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10, and want to continue using the customizations you made to FlexBuilder, you can migrate those business rules into the Account Generator. As part of the upgrade process, AutoInstall automatically creates a PL/SQL function from your FlexBuilder configuration and a unique process, called Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules, which can be called from the appropriate Oracle Workflow item type.

Using the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process will make your upgrade to Release 11 faster. However, you should not make any changes to the resulting process if your accounting needs change. (Oracle does not support modifications to the PL/SQL functions or Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules processes.) If you anticipate changing the Account Generator rules frequently or on short notice, you may want to create a *new* custom Account Generator process

during the upgrade, because this process will be a more suitable starting point for future changes.

> **Note:** If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10, but did not customize the default configuration, you do not need to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules processes. The default processes have the same result as the Flexbuilder defaults.

Customize a Default Account Generator Process. If a default Account Generator processes does not satisfy your accounting requirements, you can use Oracle Workflow to customize it. Create a new process or copy the existing default and change the name. Then use the renamed process as a base for your changes.

> **Additional Information:** Customizing the Account Generator, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Upgrading FlexBuilder to the Account Generator

Use the following chart to determine the actions you need to take, according to the way you choose to upgrade from FlexBuilder to the Account Generator.

For users of...	Who use the default(s)...	Who use customized FlexBuilder...	Who customize the default...
Oracle Assets Oracle Order Entry Oracle Purchasing Oracle Receivables	No action.	See After Upgrade Step 3.	See After Upgrade Step 4.
Oracle Projects	Default is incomplete. Customize.	See After Upgrade Step 3.	See After Upgrade Step 4.

Important Upgrade Steps

You need to set up Oracle Workflow to use the Account Generator feature. AutoInstall installs Oracle Workflow for you; however, you need to complete additional setup steps after the AutoInstall processing is complete. If you plan to customize the Account Generator configuration, you should also install the Oracle Workflow Builder on a PC. The Category 4 steps in this chapter provide detailed information.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Workflow Guide

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Flexbuilder, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Flexbuilder

Steps	Performed by
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Complete Installation Steps for Oracle Workflow	System Administrator
❏ **2.** Complete Installation Steps for Oracle Workflow Builder	System Administrator
❏ **3.** Indicate Use of FlexBuilder for the Account Generator (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏ **4.** Customize the Account Generator Process (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist/ System Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Complete Installation Steps for Oracle Workflow
Performed by: **System Administrator**

User's guide needed: **Oracle Workflow Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, and Oracle Receivables**

```
Oracle Workflow is installed by AutoInstall. You must manually perform
additional setup steps after the AutoInstall processing is complete.
```

Step 2: Complete Installation Steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (Conditionally Required)
Performed by: **System Administrator**

User's guide needed: **Oracle Workflow Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, and Oracle Receivables**

You must perform this step if you are customizing the default Account Generator process for your product. Oracle Workflow Builder (client-side) is installed on a PC using Oracle Installer.

Step 3: Indicate Use of FlexBuilder Process for Account Generator (Conditionally Required)
Performed by: **System Administrator**

User's guide needed: **Oracle Workflow Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, and Oracle Receivables**

You must perform this step if you want use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type. This process replicates your FlexBuilder customizations from Release 10.

Make sure AutoInstall successfully upgraded your FlexBuilder rules. If it failed to create the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process, you can run the upgrade scripts manually. The Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process contains the logic from your customized FlexBuilder assignments. The process contains a function that retrieves the necessary item attribute values (corresponding to raw parameters in FlexBuilder) and calls PL/SQL functions to create the code combination.

Use the Account Generation Processes window to associate the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

> **Additional Information:** Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

To manually convert FlexBuilder functions to Account Generator processes:
1. Obtain the FlexBuilder function codes.

   To convert your FlexBuilder functions to Account Generator processes, you first need to obtain the FlexBuilder function codes. You can obtain a particular code using the following query:

   ```
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
   SQL> select f.function_code
        from fnd_flexbuilder_functions f, fnd_application_vl a
        where a.application_id = <Application Name>
   ```

```
    and f.function_name = <Function Name>
    and f.application_id = a.application_id;
```

Or, you can obtain all the FlexBuilder function codes using the following query:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select a.application_name, f.function_name, f.function_code
   from fnd_flexbuilder_functions f, fnd_application_vl a
   where f.application_id = a.application_id
   order by a.application_name, f.function_name;
```

2. Convert the FlexBuilder function to a PL/SQL function.

Run the program $FND_TOP/bin/FNDFBPLS to convert the FlexBuilder function to a PL/SQL function. It takes the following arguments:

```
$FND_TOP/bin/FNDFBPLS <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y  \
<application shortname> <function code> <PL/SQL code filename>
```

For example, to convert the Oracle Purchasing FlexBuilder function, Purchase Order Charge Account, the syntax would be:

```
$FND_TOP/bin/FNDFBPLS apps_appdemo/fnd 0 Y PO  \
PO_PO_CHARGE_ACCOUNT pochracc.pls
```

This will create a file called pochracc.pls. This file contains the specification and body of a PL/SQL package called PO_PO_CHARGE_ACCOUNT, which in turn contains a function called BUILD. This BUILD function contains the FlexBuilder assignment rules and parameter derivations as PL/SQL code.

The BUILD function takes as input arguments the structure number of the key flexfield structure for which the combination is to be built and the raw parameters to the FlexBuilder function. The output arguments are the concatenated segments that are built and an error message to be used in case of a failure. It will return a boolean value of FALSE if an error occurs. Otherwise, it returns a value of TRUE.

In our example, the BUILD function syntax would look like this:

```
FUNCTION BUILD (
FB_FLEX_NUM IN NUMBER DEFAULT 101,
BOM_COST_ELEMENT_ID IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
BOM_RESOURCE_ID IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
CATEGORY_ID IN VARCHAR2 DEFAULT NULL,
...
...
```

```
FB_FLEX_SEG IN OUT VARCHAR2,
FB_ERROR_MSG IN OUT VARCHAR2)
RETURN BOOLEAN;
```

3. After you create the .pls file, run it in the APPS schema to create the PL/SQL package.

Step 4: Customize the Account Generator Process (Conditionally Required)
Performed by: **Application Specialist and System Administrator**

User's guide needed: **Oracle Flexfields Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, and Oracle Receivables**

You must perform this step if you have customized your Account Generator process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type and assigned a new name to it. If you made customizations to the default process, but did not change its name, you do not need to perform this step.

1. Use Oracle Workflow to create a new process. Or, copy the existing default and change its name, and then use the renamed process as a base for your changes.

    Additional Information: Customizing the Account Generator (*Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*) and the individual product user's guides

2. Test your new process.

    Additional Information: Testing Your Account Generator Setup, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

3. Use the Account Generation Processes window to associate the new process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

    Additional Information: Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

13

Oracle GL or Oracle Public Sector GL

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger (GL) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Public Sector General Ledger use multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger.

Important Upgrade Steps

This section lists potentially time-consuming upgrade tasks and alerts you to important decisions that you need to make when upgrading or implementing Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger. You'll find detailed instructions for completing each step in the Preparing to Upgrade or After the Upgrade sections of this chapter.

Reviewing and Migrating Daily Rates

General Ledger Release 11 uses a new data model for daily rates. Previously, a separate set of daily rates was maintained for each set of books. Now, a single set of

daily rates is maintained for each Applications installation. Therefore, if you use multiple sets of books in a single Release 11 Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for all those sets of books.

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes and enhancements to Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. The After the Upgrade section of this chapter contains detailed information about implementing these changes. Refer to your product-specific documentation set for complete information about product functionality.

Using Custom Programs to Automatically Load Daily Rates

We provide an open interface table specifically for automatically loading daily rates. If you currently use a custom process to automatically populate the GL_DAILY_ CONVERSION_RATES table in Release 10, you must modify the process to use the new interface table in Release 11.

Account Types for Summary Accounts

In Release 10 (and earlier), your summary accounts automatically had their account type set to Owners' Equity. In Release 11, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. As a result, you must ensure that all of your account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type.

Translating Owners' Equity Accounts

You can choose whether to use a Year-to-Date (YTD) or Period-to-Date (PTD) rule to translate owners' equity. In earlier releases, the YTD rule was always used.

AutoPost Enhancements

You can define multiple AutoPost criteria sets per set of books. When you upgrade to Release 11, any Release 10 AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped in a criteria set named Standard for each set of books.

Mass Approvals Program

The Mass Approvals program has been renamed Mass Funds Check/Reservation. You must specify an AutoPost criteria set as a parameter to this program.

Function Security

You use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows. This was previously controlled by a profile option.

Consolidation Mappings

There are new features available for defining consolidation mappings. In particular, the new mapping rules enable you to consolidate using the parent values of your summary accounts. Note that any existing mapping rules you have defined in Release 10 will be retained in Release 11.

Concurrent Program Controls

The Number of Accounting Flexfields in Memory setting in the Concurrent Program Controls window no longer applies to Journal Import. There is also a new field (starting with Release 10.7) called Rollback Segment that affects the Open Period and Add/Delete Summary Templates programs.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 1. Review Daily Rates (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL) and Database Administrator

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Review Daily Rates (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)/Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

> **Attention:**   Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books with the same functional currency in the same Release 10 Applications installation.

In Release 11, Oracle General Ledger uses a new data model for daily rates. Previously, a separate set of daily rates was maintained for each set of books. Now, a single set of daily rates is maintained for each applications instance. Therefore, if you use multiple sets of books in a single Release 11 Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for all those sets of books.

> **Note:**   A daily rate set includes all the daily rates you've defined for specific combinations of foreign currency, rate type, and date.

What Actually Happens During the Release 11 Upgrade?

When you upgrade to Release 11, AutoInstall runs a script that analyzes the daily rates maintained in all the sets of books within your Applications installation. For each date for which daily rates are maintained, the script looks for rate conflicts—instances where the From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type are the same in more than one set of books, but where the daily rate differs.

If no conflicts are found, all the daily rates for that combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type from all of the sets of books are transferred into the new daily rate set for the Applications installation. If any conflicts are found, no rates are transferred.

This process is repeated for each combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type for which you maintain daily rates in your sets of books.

> **Attention:** Any descriptive flexfields you've defined for your daily rates will not be transferred during the upgrade, even if no daily rates conflicts are found. To retain your descriptive flexfields, you must complete the step, Migrate Conflicting Daily Rates to New or Existing Rate Types, after you upgrade.

To review your daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report, type the following:

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
   ```

   Then, if you are upgrading from Release 10.6 or 10.7, type:

   ```
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
   ```

   or, if you are upgrading from Release 10.4 or 10.5, type:

   ```
   $ sqlplus <GL username>/<GL password> @glurtrpp.sql
   ```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict.

3. If conflicting rates exist, review them online in each set of books to identify the nature of the conflict. Alternatively, run the Daily Rates Listing for each set of books and compare the reports manually.

   Your review will provide you with information you can use when deciding how to resolve the daily rates conflict later in the upgrade process. You will run a SQL*Plus script after the upgrade to migrate your daily rates to the new table. The script will require you to choose between one of two options for handling the conflict:

   Option 1: Choose the daily rates for one set of books to use for all your sets of books under Release 11.

   For example, assume you have two sets of books in one Release 10.7 Applications installation. Each maintains daily rates for converting German

marks to U.S. dollars (DM to USD), rate type Corporate. Also assume that rates for the first five days of December 1997 are:

Day	Rate for SOB 1	Rate for SOB 2
01-DEC-1997	.5757	.576
02-DEC-1997	.5759	.576
03-DEC-1997	.5761	.576
04-DEC-1997	.5763	.576
05-DEC-1997	.5765	.577

If you decide to use the daily rates from SOB 1 because they have greater precision than those in SOB 2, both sets of books in your Release 11 installation will use the SOB 1 rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars. The SOB 2 rates will not be retained.

Option 2: Selectively retain daily rates for a set of books by migrating the rates to a new rate type.

Using the same assumptions as the previous example, if you decide you want to keep the daily rates from both sets of books, you can migrate one of the sets of rates to a new rate type.

For example, you can instruct the After Upgrade SQL*Plus script to migrate all the daily rates maintained in SOB 2 to a new rate type, Corp2. Then you can instruct the script to migrate all of the daily rates maintained in SOB 1 to the rate type Corporate.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger	
❑ 1. Migrate Conflicting Daily Rates to New or Existing Rate Types (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator /Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger	
❑ 2. Revise Custom Programs that Automatically Load Daily Rates (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❑ 3. Ensure that Account Segment Values Use Correct Account Type (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 4. Review Owners' Equity Translation Rule Profile Option (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 5. Review AutoPost Criteria (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 6. Review Program Submission Parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 7. Set Source for Freeze Subledger Journals (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 8. Set Function Security for Journal Posting and Reversing Functions in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances Windows (Recommended)	System Administrator and Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 9. Set FSG Security Profile Option (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 10. Review Daily Rates Profile Option (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 11. Review Consolidation Mapping Definitions (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 12. Review Concurrent Program Controls (Optional)	Database Administrator and Application Specialist (Oracle GL)
❑ 13. Update Program Calls (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger.

Step 1: Migrate Conflicting Daily Rates to New or Existing Rate Types (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle General Ledger**

> **Attention:** Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books in the same Release 10 Applications installation. Also perform this step if you want to retain descriptive flexfield information associated with your daily rates. You will use the SQL*Plus script discussed in Step 3 of this task to migrate all the daily rates for which you want to retain descriptive flexfield information.

> **Note:** We recommend that you perform this step before any of your users log on to General Ledger. However, it is okay if the person performing the upgrade needs to log on to check the upgrade success or failure, examine upgraded daily rates, or define new conversion types.

To migrate your conflicting daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report by using the following SQL*Plus script:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict.

   If no conflicts exist and you do not want to retain any descriptive flexfields associated with your daily rates, omit the remainder of this step.

3. If conflicting rates exist, or if you want to retain descriptive flexfields, run the following SQL*Plus script

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

The script requires the following parameters:

For this parameter...	Enter the following...
Set of Books Name	the name of the set of books from which you want to transfer rates.
From Conversion Type	the conversion type of the rates to be transferred.
From Currency	the From currency of the rates to be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates for all from currencies.
From Date	the starting date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates starting with the earliest date for which daily rates are defined.
To Date	the ending date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer all rates starting with the From Date up to and including the most recent date for which daily rates are defined.
Destination Conversion Type	the conversion type to assign to the rate after it has been transferred. This conversion type must already exist.
Override Flag	Y if you want to replace rates that already exist in the rate set. Enter N if you only want to add new rates to the rate set.

Note: Do not use leading or trailing spaces when entering these parameters. Also note that the parameters are case-sensitive.

4. To retain descriptive flexfield information for your daily rates, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window to redefine the daily rates descriptive flexfields you used in Release 10.

Attention: This step is needed to define the descriptive flexfields in the new GL_DAILY_RATES table since the Release 10 definitions are not transferred from the GL_DAILY_ CONVERSION_RATES table.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 2: Revise Custom Programs that Automatically Load Daily Rates (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Daily Rates**

> **Attention:** Perform this step *only if* you currently use a custom process to load daily rates into Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger Release 10.

This release contains an open interface table (GL_DAILY_RATES_INTERFACE) that loads daily rates. If you currently use a custom process to automatically populate the GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_RATES table in Release 10, you must modify the process to use the new interface table in Release 11.

> **Warning:** Loading daily rates directly into the GL_DAILY_RATES table can corrupt your General Ledger data. This action is not supported by Oracle Corporation.

> **Additional Information:** Entering Daily Rates, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 3: Ensure that Account Segment Values Use Correct Account Type (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Summary Accounts, Financial Analyzer Integration**

> **Attention:** This step is required if you use summary accounts in General Ledger *and* use Oracle Financial Analyzer to analyze your General Ledger account information. This step is highly recommended if you use summary accounts but do not use Financial Analyzer.

In Release 10 (and earlier), your summary accounts automatically had their account type set to Owners' Equity. In Release 11, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. As a result, you must ensure that all the account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type. Otherwise, your summary accounts will be incorrectly classified.

For example, if you define a parent account value, 1999, that is the total of all your asset accounts, the account type for the parent segment value 1999 should be set to Asset. When you subsequently define a summary account using this segment value, the summary account will be correctly defined as an asset.

> **Note:** Pay special attention to the following important information:
>
> - If the parent segment value is T, account type is not meaningful and does not need to be changed.
>
> - If you use dependent account segments and have difficulty completing this step, contact Oracle Support Services.

Correctly setting the account type for your account segment values will ensure that your summary balances are displayed correctly if you choose to perform additional analysis using Oracle Financial Analyzer.

To ensure that account segment values use the correct account type:

1. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to unfreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

2. Navigate to the Find Value Set window.

3. Query the value set Name for your natural account segment. Optionally, query the segment values that you use for your summary accounts. When you have entered your query values, choose Find. The Segment Values window appears.

4. Choose Hierarchy, Qualifiers from the poplist.

5. For each account segment value you use in your summary accounts, open the Segment Qualifiers window and review the setting for Account Type.

6. If the account type is wrong, change it.

7. When you have reviewed and changed your account types, save your work.

8. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to refreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.

9. Run the following SQL*Plus script:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

There are no parameters for this script.

Step 4: Review Owners' Equity Translation Rule Profile Option (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Translation**

Prior to Release 11, General Ledger's Translation feature used two translation rules, according to the account type being translated:

Account Type	Translation Rule
Assets, Liabilities, and Owners' Equity	Year-to-Date (YTD) Rule: $YTD_{(xlt)} = Rate\ X\ YTD_{(func)}$ where (xlt) = translated currency $(func)$ = functional currency
Revenue and Expense	Period-to-Date (PTD) Rule: $PTD_{(xlt)} = Rate\ X\ PTD_{(func)}$

In earlier releases, the Year-to-Date rule was always used when translating owners' equity. In Release 11, you can choose whether to use the Year-to-Date or Period-to-Date rule to translate owners' equity.

Review the profile option GL:Owners Equity Translation Rule to make sure the setting reflects the translation method your organization uses to translate owners' equity:

PTD   Owners' equity is translated using the Period-to-Date rule. This is the default.

YTD   Owners' equity is translated using the Year-to-Date rule. This selection is the same as the Release 10 translation behavior.

> **Note:** Owners' Equity accounts are translated using historical rates. If you do not maintain historical rates in your set of books, General Ledger will create them for each period for which you translate your owners' equity accounts, using:
>
> - Period average rates if you use the PTD rule.
>
> - Period end rates if you use the YTD rule.

If you select PTD, owners' equity will be translated using the Period-to-Date rule for any new translations. Previously translated owners' equity balances will not change.

If you want to restate your previously translated owners' equity balances using the Period-to-Date rule, follow these steps:

1. Purge the old translated balances for each period to be restated.

2. Change the GL:Owners Equity Translation Rule profile option to PTD.

3. For each period to be restated, use the Historical Rates window to delete the rates used to translate owners' equity accounts, as follows:

   - Retained Earnings: Delete any non-historical rates.

   - Other Owners' Equity accounts: Delete any period rates.

4. Run translation. Your owners' equity balances will be translated using the Period-to-Date rule.

   > **Additional Information:** Setting General Ledger Profile Options, Purging Archived Account Balances and Journals in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 5: Review AutoPost Criteria (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **AutoPost**

> **Attention:** Perform this step only if you have previously defined and used AutoPost criteria in Release 10.

You use AutoPost criteria to automatically post journal batches that have specific combinations of journal source, period, and account type. In earlier releases of General Ledger, you could only define one set of criteria for AutoPost. You had to redefine the AutoPost criteria whenever you wanted to change the priorities of the sets of components.

In Release 11 you can define multiple AutoPost criteria sets per set of books. You can then schedule AutoPost to run at different times and submission intervals for each criteria set you've defined.

When you upgrade to Release 11, any Release 10 AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped into a criteria set named Standard for each set of books. You should review this criteria set and make any desired changes. You may also wish to define new criteria sets.

After you review your AutoPost criteria, you can submit and schedule your AutoPost runs using the Submit Request window. You will need to provide the Criteria Set name as a run parameter. This parameter is new in Release 11.

> **Additional Information:** Posting Journal Batches Automatically in *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 6: Review Program Parameters for Mass Funds Check/Reservation (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Mass Funds Check/Reservation program**

> **Attention:** Perform this step if you previously used the Mass
> Approvals program in Release 10. Note that Mass Approvals has
> been renamed in Release 11 to Mass Funds Check/Reservation.

You use the Mass Funds Check/Reservation program to check or reserve funds for
unposted journal batches. In Release 10, General Ledger used your Automatic
Posting options to prioritize the funds check and reservation. With the changes to
AutoPost in Release 11, you must now specify the AutoPost criteria set when you
run Mass Funds Check/Reservation. If you have used Standard Request
Submission to set the program to run at specific intervals, you should review the
program parameters and specify an appropriate AutoPost criteria set.

> **Additional Information:** Running the Mass Funds
> Check/Reservation Program, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide,
> Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release
> 11*

Step 7: Set Source for Freeze Subledger Journals (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide,
Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Enter Journals**

To freeze a journal source so that no one can modify batches from that source,
navigate to the Journal Sources window and select the Freeze Journals check box for
those journal sources you want to freeze.

> **Additional Information:** Journal Sources, *Oracle General Ledger
> User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's
> Guide, Release 11*

**Step 8: Set Function Security for Journal Posting and Reversing Functions
(Recommended)**
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Enter Journals**

In Release 10, function security for journal posting in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows was enabled with the profile option, Journals: Allow Posting During Journal Entry. This profile option is ignored in Release 11.

In Release 11, you use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows. If you do not specifically exclude the functions Enter Journals: Post and Enter Journals: Reverse from selected responsibilities, all users will have access to these functions.

> **Additional Information:** Overview of Function Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

Step 9: Set FSG Security Profile Option (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Financial Statement Generator (FSG)**

If you want to apply your defined segment security rules to reports that are produced using FSG or the GL Desktop Integrator Report Wizard, you must set the profile option FSG:Enforce Segment Value Security to Yes.

> **Additional Information:** General Ledger Applications Profile Options, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 10: Review Daily Rates Profile Option (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Entering Daily Rates**

The profile option Daily Rates Window:Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry is used to specify whether to enforce the automatic calculation of inverse exchange rates in the Daily Rates window. When the profile option is set to Yes and a user enters a daily rate to convert currency A to currency B, Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger automatically calculates the inverse rate (currency B to A) and enters it in the adjacent column. If either rate is changed, Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger automatically recalculates the other. When the profile option is set to No, the inverse relationship is not enforced. Users can change either of the rates independently.

In versions of Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger prior to Release 11, the inverse relationship was always enforced.

> **Additional Information:** General Ledger Applications Profile Options, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 11: Review Consolidation Mapping Definitions (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Consolidation**

> **Attention:** We recommend that you perform this step if you use General Ledger's consolidation features.

In Release 11, there are new features available for defining consolidation mappings. In particular, new mapping rules have been added which enable you to consolidate using parent values of your summary accounts. Note that any existing mapping rules you have defined in Release 10 will be retained in Release 11.

We recommend that you read about the new General Ledger consolidation features in the user's guide, then review and modify your consolidation mapping definitions as needed.

> **Additional Information:** Multi-Company Accounting and Consolidation, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 12: Review Concurrent Program Controls (Optional)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle GL)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Open Period, Journal Import, MassAllocations, Add/Delete Summary Templates**

In Release 11, the Number of Accounting Flexfields in Memory concurrent program controls setting only applies to MassAllocations. Since it no longer applies to Journal Import, you may wish to review the setting in the Define Concurrent Program Controls window.

If you are upgrading to Release 11 from a version earlier than Release 10.7 Production 16, there is a new field (Rollback Segment) in the Concurrent Program Controls window. Use this field to assign a specific rollback segment to be used whenever you run the Open Period and Add/Delete Summary Templates programs.

The Open Period and Add/Delete Summary Templates programs typically require a rollback segment larger than the one General Ledger uses for normal transaction processing. The new Rollback Segment field allows you to assign a large rollback segment to the Open Period and Add/Delete Summary Templates programs during your set up procedures.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Concurrent Program Controls, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

Step 13: Update Program Calls (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Journal Import**

> **Attention:** Perform this step only if you call the Journal Import program by means other than the standard Oracle General Ledger submission windows.

When you specify parameters for the Journal Import program, you must use a date format that is different from the one used in some earlier versions of General Ledger. The following information outlines the program and its parameters. All parameters require values except where indicated with (optional). Use this list to update your program calls where necessary.

> **Warning:** **During this step, submit the program from CONCSUB and not directly from the command line. Submitting the program from the command line may corrupt your data.**

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 11

Parameter	Notes
Interface Run ID	Use the sequence GL_INTERFACE_CONTROL_S to generate unique IDs
Set of Books ID	N/A
Post Error to Suspense flag	(Y = Yes, N = No)
Start Date (in the form YYYY/MM/DD)	If you don't want to specify a start date, enter a null string
End Date (in the form YYYY/MM/DD)	If you don't want to specify an end date, enter a null string
Create Summary Journals flag	(Y = Yes, N = No)
Import Descriptive Flexfield code	Values for the Import Descriptive Flexfield code include: N for No W for Import With Validation O for Import Without Validation

Before you run Journal Import, you must insert a row in the GL_INTERFACE_ CONTROL table for each source you want to import. For each row, specify the following information:

je_source_name	Source you want to import — use the corresponding value in the JE_SOURCE_NAME column in the GL_JE_SOURCES table, not the USER_JE_SOURCE_NAME column
status	S
interface_run_id	Use the sequence GL_INTERFACE_CONTROL_S
set_of_books_id	Your set of books ID
GROUP_ID (optional)	Group ID of your import data
packet_id	NULL

Journal Import will automatically delete each row when the source is imported successfully.

> **Additional Information:**   Importing Journals and Defining Journal Sources, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11*

14

Global Accounting Engine

This chapter tells how to prepare Global Accounting Engine (AX) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade this product with AutoInstall. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Global Accounting Engine uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Global Accounting Engine for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Global Accounting Engine	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❑ 1. Close All Periods (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Payables)/Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❑ 2. Ensure That All Transactions Are Translated (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Payables)/Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❑ 3. Ensure That All Balances Are Calculated and Up-to-Date (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❑ 4. Calculate Balances for All Existing Accounting Lines and Ensure That They Are Correct (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist/Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Close All Periods (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All Release 10 levels**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Payables/Oracle Receivables)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

All prior periods must be closed in Oracle Payables, Oracle Receivables, and Oracle Inventory. All current and future periods should not be open to prevent transactions during installation.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Oracle General Ledger User's Guide

Step 2: Ensure That All Transactions Are Translated (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All Release 10 levels**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Payables)/Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Submit all events per application and set of books to the Posting Manager for translation. The concurrent log file in the Posting Manager provides an overview of untranslatable events. Check this file to see that there are no untranslatable events or events with the status of Error.

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 3: Ensure That All Balances Are Calculated and Up-to-Date (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All Releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Check to see that the balance calculation was patched to Release 10. Do this by performing the following steps from the command line:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

If upgrading from Release 10.5:

```
$ sqlplus <AX username>/<AX password> @axxpre01.sql
```

If upgrading from Release 10.6 or 10.7:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

If the script report that the balance calculation was upgraded, go to Step 2, Add Windows for Zooms in the After the Upgrade steps. If this script reports that the

balance calculation was not upgraded, then the balance calculation was not patched in Release 10. Continue with Step 4 in this section.

> **Note:** In Release 10, balances can run for only one year at a time. All balances for the year are recalculated each time you run a balance report. If new transactions were created for a prior year, a balance calculation must be run once for that year and once again for each subsequent year. Release 11 uses a new data model for a balance calculation that includes a multi-year balance calculation. Only transactions that were not used in the previous balance calculation are used to update the balances, so there is no need to recalculate the balance.

Step 4: Calculate Balances for All Existing Accounting Lines and Ensure That They Are Correct (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist/Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

The new balance calculation depends on a new column in the AX_SLE_LINES table to determine if balances must be calculated. To ensure that balances are not calculated twice for the accounting lines, all accounting lines are marked as balanced as part of the post-upgrade step.

You must calculate the balances for all accounting lines before you upgrade. Do this by submitting the Balance reports to the latest period for each application and set of books. Do not create new accounting lines before you complete the post-upgrade steps. Doing so could cause your balances to be incorrect.

You should back up the AX_SLE_LINES and AX_BALANCES tables before you upgrade.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Global Accounting Engine for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Global Accounting Engine	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Global Accounting Engine.	
❏ **1.** Update Existing Accounting Lines and Balances for the Upgraded Balance Calculation Data Model (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **2.** Add Windows for Zooms	System Administrator

Category 5 Steps

You should perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Global Accounting Engine.

Step 1: Update Existing Accounting Lines and Balances for the Upgraded Balance Calculation Data Model (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

Perform this step only after you perform the pre-upgrade steps and before you patch Release 10 with the new balance calculation data model. See Step 3 on page 14-3.

> **Note:** This procedure may take a long time to complete. It updates all accounting lines and balances and must run to completion before users can use the Global Accounting Engine.

The procedure marks a balance as an initial balance if it is in the earliest NET-xxxx period and there are no existing accounting entries for that year. It updates the historic_balance column in the AX_BALANCES table to Y. To run the upgrade procedure, type the following:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> execute ax_upgrade_bal_pkg.upgrade_balances(<batchsize>);
```

<batchsize> is the number of rows processed before committing. The default is 10000, but you should use a size that is appropriate to your environment.

> **Additional Information:**   See the Preface in this manual for information about sizing.

After the procedure has run to completion, check to see that there are no unbalanced lines. If the procedure does not run successfully, contact your Oracle Support Services representative.

You should manually check to see if all your historic balances are marked as such. If an initial balance was not recognized by the upgrade because one or more accounting entries was found in the same year, recreate your balances using the API described in the *Oracle Applications Global Engine Accounting User's Guide* for creating correct initial balances.

Step 2: Add Windows for Zooms
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Global Accounting Engine**

If you want to zoom to a window, verify that the window exists in the responsibility that you want to zoom from. You cannot zoom from Oracle General Ledger to an Oracle Payables window unless the window exists in the menu path of the responsibility that you are currently using.

If you want to use the full drill down feature of the Global Accounting Engine, you must integrate the windows that you want to drill down to into the menu of your General Ledger responsibility. If you want to zoom from the Global Accounting Engine windows to General Ledger or the subledgers, you should check to see that these windows exist in the responsibility's menu.

15

Oracle Human Resources

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Human Resources (HRMS) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Human Resources with AutoInstall. Oracle HRMS covers Oracle Human Resources (PER), Oracle Payroll (PAY), Oracle Training Administration (OTA), and Oracle SSP/SMP (SSP).

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle HRMS may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle HRMS uses single organization architecture.

Overview — Oracle Human Resources

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Human Resources.

Important Upgrade Steps

This section lists potentially time-consuming upgrade tasks and alerts you to important decisions that you need to make when you upgrade or implement Oracle Human Resources.

Disabling Auditing

During the Oracle Human Resources upgrade, work telephone numbers are migrated from PER_ALL_PEOPLE_F to PER_PHONES. These numbers are removed from all current and future-dated records in PER_ALL_PEOPLE_F, and a corresponding row is inserted into PER_PHONES. If your system audits at the table and/or column level, and you have auditing enabled during the upgrade, a large

number of changes can appear in your audit trail (depending on the number of employees). If you do not want to record all these changes, disable auditing for the duration of the upgrade.

> **Additional Information:**   Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Important Changes to Functionality

The following are changes and enhancements to Oracle Human Resources that may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your product-specific documentation set for complete information about product functionality.

Career Management

This new functional area enables you to develop the competence approach to career management within your enterprise. A single, unified model and language has been created for traditionally different activities (such as appraisals, assessment, and recording accomplishments and requirements).

You can use the competence approach to hold information about the attributes and attainments of employees and applicants, and the requirements of jobs and positions. This approach replaces the skills information held in Special Information Types in earlier releases. However, the Special Information approach is still supported in Release 11, so you can make a gradual transition to the new approach based on your business needs.

HR Direct Access

An increasing number of HR tasks can now be performed directly by employees and line managers using the web-based HR Direct Access. For example, employees can update their addresses, contacts, resumes, qualifications, and work choices. They can also request to enroll in a class or apply for a job. Oracle Workflow routes these requests to the appropriate managers for approval.

Line managers can review or update information for their employees, such as competence profiles, qualifications, and succession plans. They can also submit a draft candidate offer for approval, perform suitability matching, and create assessments and appraisals.

Employees can view and update only their own information. Line managers have restricted access using the same security profiles that restrict data access through the standard HR forms.

Security Profiles

Oracle HRMS users with a restricted security profile now connect to the same Oracle user as those with an unrestricted, or View All, security profile—the APPS Oracle user.

Reporting users are unaffected by this enhancement. As in previous releases of Oracle HRMS, you have the option to create a read-only reporting Oracle user for each restricted security profile. This enhancement simplifies the administration of security profiles. It is no longer necessary to maintain secure Oracle users for every restricted security profile.

The Generate Secure User process is now run only if you are creating reporting users.

Telephone Numbers

We have removed the Work Telephone field from the People window. Telephone numbers are no longer stored in the Person table. They are now stored in the Phones table (PER_PHONES) and maintained using the Phone Numbers window (PERWSPHN). You can define and store multiple phone numbers for a person, each of a different type (such as home, mobile, or office).

You can also store up to three telephone numbers for each address, if you want to associate a number with a particular address. However, this information is held separately from the numbers entered in the Phone Numbers window, and must be maintained separately.

Preparing to Upgrade — Oracle Human Resources

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Human Resources for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Human Resources	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **1.** Update Custom Code Following Removal of Obsolete Synonyms (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❏ **2.** Check Location of Customized Script for Salary Proposal View (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Update Custom Code Following Removal of Obsolete Synonyms (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

The following synonyms existed in Release 10 for upwards compatibility with Release 9 following the renaming of tables between Release 9 and Release 10.

Release 9	Release 10
PER_LETTER_GENERATION_STATUSES	PER_LETTER_GEN_STATUSES
PER_ABSENCE_ATTENDANCE_REASONS	PER_ABS_ATTENDANCE_REASONS
PER_CONTACTS	PER_CONTACT_RELATIONSHIPS
PER_CLASSIFICATIONS	PER_SPECIAL_INFO_TYPES

The Release 11 upgrade drops these synonyms. If you have any custom code that references the Release 9 table names, you must replace them with the Release 10 names in the code before you perform the upgrade.

Step 2: Check Location of Customized Script for Salary Proposal View (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

The Salary Proposals view (formerly named PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) has been renamed to HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized.

The script that creates the view is peupl01v.sql. If you customized this script for Release 10, you need to reapply your changes to the script for Release 11. The script can be found in $PER_TOP/admin/sql. Check the absolute location of your customized script before you perform the upgrade since $PER_TOP will point to the new Release 11 code tree after upgrade.

After the Upgrade — Oracle Human Resources

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Human Resources, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Human Resources	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Human Resources.	
❑ 1. Run the Generic Post-upgrade Driver	Database Administrator
❑ 2. Run the Relevant Post-upgrade Driver for the Legislation	Database Administrator
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Human Resources.	
❑ 3. Load Schools and Colleges Seed Data for Career Management (Recommended)	Database Administrator
❑ 4. Reapply Customization to Script for Salary Proposals View (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❑ 5. Drop Obsolete Oracle Users (Recommended)	Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Human Resources.

Step 1: Run Generic Post-upgrade Driver

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone logs on to: **Oracle Human Resources**

This driver delivers the generic entity horizon. To run it, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Then, apply the driver hr11gn.drv.

Step 2: Run the Relevant Post-upgrade Driver for the Legislation

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone logs on to: **Oracle Human Resources**

U.K. and U.S. users must install additional legislation-specific startup data that will enable them to make full use of the soft-coded flexfield structures supplied with Oracle Human Resources.

If the legislation is U.K.:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Apply the driver hr11gb.drv. This driver creates two output files:

pegbutcl.lst	Logs the step that removes previously seeded user tables for the U.K. legislation before delivering the latest version. It may also show where seed data names have been changed between releases.
perleggb.lst	Logs the housekeeping step that gets rid of redundant U.K. seed data after delivery of the latest version. It also records the new balance feeds that have been inserted following an upgrade from Oracle Human Resources to Oracle HRMS.

Both files are used by Oracle Support Services to diagnose problems with seed data following an upgrade. SQL errors indicate severe problems. Keep these files for reference in the event of any future problem with U.K. seed data.

If the legislation is U.S.:
```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Then, apply the driver hr11us.drv.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Human Resources listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 3: Load Schools and Colleges Seed Data for Career Management (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses the: **Establishment Attendances form**

There is a new form in this release that allows you to maintain a record of people's attendance at schools, colleges, and universities. Complete this step if you want to load a set of U.S. and/or U.K. universities and colleges as reference data.

> **Note:** You can also enter schools, colleges, and universities manually using the Establishments form.

To load U.K. universities and colleges:
```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Then, apply the driver hr11cmgb.drv.

To load U.S. schools, colleges, and universities:
```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Then, apply the driver hr11cmus.drv.

Step 4: Reapply Customization to Script for Salary Proposal View (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Salary Administration**

The Salary Proposals view (formerly named PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) has been renamed to HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized.

The script that creates the view is peupl01v.sql. If you customized this script for Release 10, you need to reapply your changes to the script for Release 11. The script, as delivered, can be found in $PER_TOP/admin/sql. You identified the location of your customized script in an upgrade preparation step.

Rerun the script to recreate the customized view:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

Step 5: Drop Obsolete Oracle Users (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Human Resources (if using Restricted Security Profiles in Release 10)**

If you used restricted security profiles in Release 10, the Oracle users you used to implement your restricted security profiles might now be obsolete. In Release 11, responsibilities that use restricted security profiles connect to the APPS Oracle user. You no longer have to maintain separate Oracle users for every restricted security profile. Your Release 10 reporting Oracle users are unaffected by this change.

Run peoldsec.sql to list Oracle users that were associated with restricted security profiles in Release 10. This script also indicates which of these Oracle users have been dropped from the database. The output is spooled to a file called peoldsec.lst in your current working directory.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/peoldsec.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

If the Oracle users listed in peoldsec.lst do not contain the custom tables, views, and so on that you want to preserve, you should drop them—they are no longer used by

Oracle HRMS. To drop a user and all its schema objects (if any), you must have the DROP USER system privilege. Because this privilege is so powerful, a security administrator is typically the only type of user to have it.

You can drop a user from a database using either the Drop menu item of Enterprise Manager/GUI, or the SQL command DROP USER.

If the user's schema contains any schema objects, use the CASCADE option to drop the user and all associated objects and foreign keys that depend on the tables of the user. If you do not specify CASCADE and the user's schema contains objects, an error message is returned and the user is not dropped. Before dropping a user whose schema contains objects, thoroughly investigate these objects and the implications of dropping them. Pay attention to any cascading effects. For example, if the user owns a table, check whether any views or procedures depend on that table.

For example:

```
$ sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

You can rerun peoldsec.sql at any time prior to dropping the PER_SECURITY_ PROFILES_OLD table to verify that your obsolete Oracle users have been successfully dropped.

> **Additional Information:** *Oracle Server Administrator's Guide, Release 8.*

Overview — Oracle Payroll (U.K.)

This overview summaries the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Payroll (U.K.).

Important Upgrade Steps

There are no additional manual steps for upgrading from Release 10 to Release 11 of Oracle Payroll (U.K.). However, you should be sure that you perform the two Category 5 After Upgrade steps for Oracle Human Resources before anyone logs on to Oracle Payroll. These steps are:

- Run generic post-upgrade driver

■ Run the relevant post-upgrade driver for the legislation

> **Attention:** You cannot upgrade Oracle Payroll (U.K.) directly from Release 9 to Release 11. You must first upgrade to Release 10.6 or 10.7 using the migration kit that is available from Oracle U.K.

Overview — Oracle Payroll (U.S.)

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Payroll (U.S.).

Important Changes to Functionality

The following are changes and enhancements to Oracle Payroll (U.S.) that may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your Product Update Notes, implementation manual and user's guides for complete information about product functionality.

U.S. Tax Information (W4) Changes

Tax information is now datetracked. In Release 10, tax information was stored in the descriptive flexfields in PER_ASSIGNMENT_EXTRA_INFO. In Release 11, it is stored in four new tables, which are listed in Step 1 of the Category 1 steps.

Preparing to Upgrade — Oracle Payroll (U.S.)

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Payroll (U.S.) for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Payroll (U.S.)	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **1.** Update Custom Code for U.S. Tax Information (W4) Changes (Conditionally Required)	SystemAdministrator
❏ **2.** Check That the Release 10 Geocode Update Patch Has Been Applied	Database Administrator
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **3.** Check That Pre-tax Deductions Have Been Upgraded by Earlier Patches	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Update Custom Code for U.S. Tax Information (W4) Changes (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Before Release 11, tax information was stored in the descriptive flexfields in PER_ ASSIGNMENT_EXTRA_INFO. There were three views:

- PAY_EMP_FED_TAX_V1

- PAY_EMP_STATE_TAX_V1

- PAY_EMP_LOCAL_TAX_V1

In Release 11, the W4 information has been datetracked. There are four new tables:

- PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_F

- PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_F

- PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_F

- PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_F

The following new views have been created to support datetracked W4:

- PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_V

- PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_V

- PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_V

- PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_V

- PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_STATE_V

- PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_COUNTY_V

- PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_CITY_V

If you have built custom code that references these old tables or views, you must update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Step 2: Check That the Release 10 Geocode Update Patch Has Been Applied
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

You must run a script (pychkgeo.sql) to check that your VERTEX geocodes have been updated by the Release 10 Geocode Update patch.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Release 10.6 or later:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pychkgeo.sql
```

This script checks whether a particular new city supported by Vertex exists on PAY_ US_CITY_NAMES. It creates the output file pychkgeo.lst in the current working directory. If the Geocode Upgrade patch has been applied (patch number 559342), pychkgeo.lst provides the following output:

```
Testing whether the Geocode Upgrade Patch (#559342) has been applied...
Geocode Upgrade Patch has been applied.
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

If the Geocode Upgrade patch has not been applied, pychkgeo.lst provides the following output:

```
Testing whether the Geocode Upgrade Patch (#559342) has been applied...
```

```
Geocode Upgrade Patch has not been applied. Please contact Oracle Support
Services for assistance and quote patch reference number: 559342
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

> **NOTE:** If you proceed with the Release 11 upgrade without
> applying patch 559342, your seeded data will be incorrect. As a
> result, Oracle cannot guarantee that taxes will be withheld correctly
> for your employees when your enterprise runs its payroll.

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for
your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 3: Check That Pre-tax Deductions Have Been Upgraded By Earlier Patches

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

You must run a script to check that your existing pre-tax deductions have been
upgraded by Megapatch 9 and 10 to the correct configuration.

If you are upgrading from Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Release 10.5 (SC):

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <HR username>/<HR Password> @pychkptx.sql
```

If you are upgrading from Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Release 10.6 or later:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS Password> @pychkptx.sql
```

The script creates the output file pychkptx.lst in the current working directory. This
file lists any pre-tax deductions that have not been upgraded to Megapatch 9 (Bug
number 403178) and Megapatch 10 (Bug number 401337). If the file lists any pre-tax
deductions (and these elements are in use), contact Oracle Support Services for

assistance. If the pre-tax deductions returned are obsolete, no further action is required.

> **WARNING:** If you're using pre-tax deductions that have not been upgraded, incorrect amounts will be withheld, your taxes will be incorrect, and you'll face a penalty from the government.

If Megapatch 9 or 10 has been applied, pychkptx.lst provides the following output:

```
Testing whether the Pre-Tax upgrade in Megapatch 9
(#403178) has been applied...

--------------------------------
The Pre-Tax Upgrade in Megapatch 9 has been applied
==================================================

Testing whether the Pre-Tax upgrade in Megapatach 10
(# 401337) has been applied...

--------------------------------
The Pre-Tax Upgrade in Megapatch 10 has been applied

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

If Megapatch 9 or 10 has not been applied, pychkptx.lst provides the following output:

```
Testing whether the Pre-Tax upgrade in Megapatch 9
(#403178) has been applied...
-
"Graham FSA" Pre-Tax Deduction in business group "Paytest BusGrp" has not been
upgraded to the Megapatch 9 configuration

--------------------------------

The Pre-Tax Upgrade in Megapatch 9 has not been applied. Please contact Oracle
Support Services for assistance and quote patch reference number: 403178
==================================================
Testing whether the Pre-Tax upgrade in Megapatch 10
(#401337) has been applied...
-
"BL_Medical_Savings" Pre-Tax Deduction in business group "BL Business Group" has
not been upgraded to the Megapatch 10 configuration
```

```
--------------------------------

The Pre-Tax Upgrade in Megapatch 10 has not been applied. Please contact Oracle
Support Services for assistance and quote patch reference number: 401337
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

After the Upgrade — Oracle Payroll (U.S.)

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Payroll (U.S.), and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Payroll (US)	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Human Resources.	
❏ **1.** Run the Post-upgrade Driver for U.S. Legislation	Database Administrator
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Human Resources.	
❏ **2.** Check for Invalid U.S. Address Information	Database Administrator
❏ **3.** Check for Invalid Employee Tax Information and Assignment Details	Database Administrator
❏ **4.** Check Invalid Tax Balances for Limit Categories	Technical Specialist (Oracle Payroll)
❏ **5.** Apply Additional Payroll Patches	Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following step before anyone logs on to Oracle Payroll (U.S.).

Step 1: Run the Post-upgrade Driver for U.S. Legislation

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone logs on to: **Oracle Payroll**

U.S. users must install additional legislation-specific startup data that will enable them to make full use of the soft-coded flexfield structures supplied with Oracle Payroll (U.S.).

To run the driver, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/driver
$ adpatch
```

Then, apply the driver py11usu.drv.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Payroll (U.S.) listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 2: Check for Invalid U.S. Address Information
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Payroll User's Guide**

Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or modifies existing employee tax information**

The U.S. Payroll post-upgrade driver (py11usu.drv) creates a file that lists any existing U.S. addresses (locations or personal addresses) that are invalid. The file pyvaladr.lst can be found in $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out.

You must check this file and correct any address data that is invalid. You can correct location addresses using the Location form. You can correct personal addresses using the Address form (taskflowed from the People form).

After correcting the data, regenerate the .lst file to check that all addresses are now valid. To regenerate the file:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PAY_TOP/admin/sql/pyvaladr.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

Step 3: Check for Invalid Employee Tax Information and Assignment Details
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **HRMS U.S. User's Manual**

Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or modifies existing employee tax information**

In Release 11, there is additional validation on U.S. employee tax and assignment information. You must check whether any of your existing data is invalid, according to the new validation.

The U.S. Payroll post-upgrade driver (py11usu.drv) upgrades tax records for all employees in all business groups. The names of employees that could not be upgraded are listed, along with their assignment number, for each business group. If all employees are upgraded successfully, there are no names listed, and pyupgtax.lst provides the following output:

```
PROCESSING EMPLOYEES IN BUSINESS GROUP: "Ranjana BG"
---------------------------------------------
PROCESSING EMPLOYEES IN BUSINESS GROUP: "Paytest BusGrp"
---------------------------------------------
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

If all employees were not successfully upgraded, pyupgtax.lst provides the following output:

```
PROCESSING EMPLOYEES IN BUSINESS GROUP: "Setup Business Group"
---------------------------------------------

Employee Washington, George Martha (Father of our country)
(Assignment Number: 1) does not have a payroll as of the start date of
employment and cannot be upgraded.

--
Employee Washington, George Martha (Father of our country)
(Assignment Number: 1) does not have a salary basis as of the start date of
employment and cannot be upgraded.

--
Employee Clinton, Mr. William Jefferson (Assignment Number: 2) does not have a
work location as of the start date of employment and cannot be upgraded.

--
Employee Lincoln, Mr. Abraham Todd (Assignment Number: 3) does not have a GRE as
of the start date of employment and cannot be upgraded.
--

PROCESSING EMPLOYEES IN BUSINESS GROUP: "Paytest BusGrp"
---------------------------------------------
PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.
```

You must correct any invalid data that is highlighted in the output file. Invalid data is caused by a variety of reasons, such as, for example, an assignment having no payroll at the start date of employment.

You can use the Assignment window to resolve most problems. For example, to resolve an assignment having no payroll at the start date of employment, do the following:

1. Select the Assignment window and use the datetrack history to see when the assignment was first given a payroll.

2. Ensure that all occurrences of the assignment have a payroll assigned.

3. Set the session date to the hire date and enter a payroll for an assignment. Then select Correct rather than Update for the details.

4. Repeat these steps for the different session dates until you have resolved them all.

After correcting the data, regenerate the .lst file to check that all employee data is now valid. This will also attempt to upgrade those employees whose tax records were not upgraded earlier.

To regenerate the file, type the following, where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> set serveroutput 1000000
SQL> spool pyupgtax.lst
SQL> execute pay_us_upgrade_w4.do_upgrade
SQL> exit
```

Step 4: Check for Invalid Tax Balances for Limit Categories
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist (Oracle Payroll)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Payroll U.S. User's Guide**

Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll or any reports showing employee balances**

As of Release 11, all employees who are exempt from SS, FUTA, SDI, SUI or Medicare taxes will have their taxable balances for these taxes set to zero on all payroll runs. You must set to zero any taxable balances previously calculated for employees who fall under these exempt categories. Use the Adjust Tax Balances

window to perform this task. Refer to the Adjustments to Employee Tax Balances in the *Oracle Payroll US User's Guide* for further information.

> **Warning:** Wages will be tracked in gross, subject, reduced subject withholdable, and excess. For 940 and SUI reports, the amounts will be included in gross wages and reported as excess; taxable will be correct but excess will not be. The amounts cannot currently be entered as exempt. For 941, the amounts will be stated correctly since they will not be included in taxable. States ask for total wages and excess wages (generally) and derive taxable from those totals.

Step 5: Apply Additional Payroll Patches
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone: **Runs a payroll**

For a U.S territory (under U.S. legislation), you must apply the latest Vertex Cobol program update, which is available from Oracle Support Services, HR Applications Support team.

Overview — Oracle Training Administration

There are no upgrade preparation steps or upgrade finishing steps for Oracle Training Administration.

Overview — Oracle SSP/SMP (U.K. only)

There are no upgrade preparation steps or upgrade finishing steps for Oracle SSP/SMP.

16

Oracle Inventory

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Inventory (INV) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Inventory with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Inventory may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Inventory uses multiple sets of books organization architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Inventory.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Inventory are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Batch Commit Sizes in Upgrade Scripts

The following SQL*Plus scripts contain commit size parameters. All scripts are in $INV_TOP/upgrade/sql. Your ORACLE Database Administrator can determine the appropriate commit size for each script given the size of your rollback segments. Each script includes the specific syntax you must modify for the commit size parameter.

Script	Syntax
invstat3.sql	`define CommitRows = 10000`
invthist.sql	`DEFINE norm_rows = 500;`
invthmln.sql	`define CommitRowsIns = 10000` `define CommitRowsUpg = 10000`
invtxact.sql	`DEFINE norm_rows = 200;`
invtxlot.sql	`DEFINE norm_rows = 250;`
invtxser.sql	`DEFINE norm_rows = 100;`
invitems.sql	`IF (counter = 500) THEN` `  COMMIT;`
invrev03.sql	`and    rownum <= 1000;`

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Inventory for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Inventory	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 1. Find and Correct Items With No Primary Unit of Measure	Database Administrator
❏ 2. Purge Unwanted Transaction History (Recommended)	Database Administrator/Inventory Manager
Category 3: Perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Inventory.	
❏ 3. Process All Data in Temporary and Interface Tables	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
❏ 4. Complete Physical Inventories in Process	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
❏ 5. Run Inventory Valuation Reports (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Find and Correct Items With No Primary Unit of Measure

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Items with no primary unit of measure may cause the upgrade to fail. To find these items, run the following script and then correct the problems manually in Oracle Inventory. Move to your pre-upgrade directory and run this script:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
```

For Release 10.5 and earlier:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg/invuomch.sql
```

For Release 10.6 and later:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg/invuomch.sql
```

The output from invuomch.sql is written to a file called invuomch.lis in the current directory. Manually correct the items identified by this statement by assigning the item a primary unit of measure in the Items window.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining Items (*Oracle Inventory User's Guide)*

Step 2: Purge Unwanted Transaction History (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you have accumulated a significant amount of transaction history data, upgrading it can take a very long time. You can run a script to purge unwanted transaction history, which will reduce the upgrade time.

To run the script, type:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

For Release 10.5 and earlier:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

For Release 10.6 and later:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

The script requires three arguments:

purge cutoff date	Only transactions before this date will be purged. The date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. For example, 1992-01-29.
organization code	Only transactions in this organization will be purged. If you want to run the purge for several organizations, you must call the script once for each organization. You choose the organization code when you first log in to Oracle Inventory.
rows per commit	Depending on how large your rollback segments are, you can vary the number of rows that are deleted per commit. The larger this number, the faster the purge, and the larger the rollback segment required.

> **Warning:** Do not purge any transactions you report on the Accrual Reconciliation report. Typically, these are purchase order receipt and return transactions. If you do purge needed transactions, they will not appear in the Accrual Reconciliation report.

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Inventory. No one should be using the Oracle Applications system when you perform these steps.

Step 3: Process All Data in Temporary and Interface Tables
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Ensure that you complete all transactions, so that no information remains in any temporary or interface tables.

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Inventory Transactions, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 4: Complete Physical Inventories in Process
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

If you have physical inventories in process, complete them before the upgrade. This means that you enter counts and perform adjustments for each physical inventory in process.

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Physical Inventory, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 5: Run Inventory Valuation Reports (recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

To prepare for installing Release 11, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory transactions, run the Elemental Value report, the Subinventory Value report, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In the After Upgrade steps, you will run other inventory valuation reports, and compare your Release 10 and Release 11 inventory balances.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Inventory, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Inventory	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Rebuild your Workday Calendar	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Inventory.	
❏ **2.** Review and Correct Your Organization Default Accounts	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
❏ **3.** Define New Cost Profile Options (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)
❏ **4.** Verify Inventory Valuation (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management or Oracle Inventory)
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature.	
❏ **5.** Create Indices on Flexfield Segment Columns	Database Administrator
❏ **6.** Summarize Demand History	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
❏ **7.** Define Item Catalog Description Profile Option	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)
❏ **8.** Update Item Descriptions (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Rebuild Your Workday Calendar

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Bills of Material User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

For Release 10.6 and later, there are several new Oracle Inventory tables that need to be populated with workday calendar data. After checking to see that your concurrent manager is running, perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to the Workday Calendar window.

2. Query your calendar.

3. Choose Build from the Special menu.

4. Commit your changes to launch the Build Workday Calendar concurrent program.

5. Repeat these steps for all calendars.

> **Additional Information:** Creating a Workday Calendar, *Oracle Bills of Material User's Guide*

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Inventory.

Step 2: Review and Correct Your Organization Default Accounts
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Review and correct, if necessary, your organization default accounts—sales and expense. You use these default accounts when you define new items.

> **Additional Information:** Organization Parameters Window, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 3: Define New Cost Profile Options (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory** or **Oracle Cost Management**

INV:Allow Expense to Asset Transaction
This profile option indicates whether you can transfer an item from an expensed subinventory to an asset location.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Inventory Profile Options, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

CST:Average Costing Option

For average costing organizations, you can choose the type of average costing: Inventory and Work in Process or Inventory Only. A null value defaults to Inventory Only average costing.

> **Additional Information:**   Oracle Cost Management Profile Options and Security Functions, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*

Step 4: Verify Inventory Valuation (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory) or Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

After you have completed your inventory installation, run the same inventory valuation reports that you ran in the upgrade preparation steps (Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value). You should use the same sort options with the default Release 11 parameters.

The totals by subinventory, subinventory account, cost element, and report totals should match. If they do not, compare the two reports for any quantity or value differences, and proceed accordingly. Contact Oracle Support Services if you are unable to balance the Release 10 and Release 11 inventory valuation reports.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the Oracle Inventory features listed below each step.

Step 5: Create Indexes on Flexfield Segment Columns

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Indicated key flexfields**

To improve performance of your key flexfields, you should create indexes on the segment columns. We recommend creating these indexes for the following key flexfields:

Flexfield	Base Table
System Items	MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS
Account Aliases	MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS
Stock Locators	MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS

For MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS, you can determine whether a concatenated index exists for the flexfield segments by running the following SQL*Plus statement and substituting MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS for <Base Tablename>:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invflseg.sql <Base Tablename>
```

This statement prints the index name, the name of the indexed column, and the position of the column in the index. If a single index includes all of your segment columns that are enabled for the System Items flexfield, then you already have a concatenated index for the System Items flexfield.

If you have segment3, segment4, segment6 (in this order) enabled for your flexfield, and you determine that a concatenated index does not already exist for these columns, create a concatenated index for segment3, segment4, and segment6 on the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table.

Name your index using the format MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_NX, where X is the first active segment column. Choose a different X if this index name already exists. In the previous example, you would name your index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_N3 using the following SQL*Plus statement:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_N3
 2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS
 3 (segment3,
 4  segment4,
 5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

Repeat the previous steps to create indexes for MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS and MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS.

Step 6: Summarize Demand History
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Forecasting**

Summarize your demand history before using it for forecasting and planning. Use the Summarize Demand Histories window to execute the demand history summarization program.

> **Additional Information:**   Summarizing Demand History, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 7: Define Item Catalog Description Profile Option
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Do before anyone uses: **Items**

In Release 10.5 (and later), you have two ways to build an item catalog description:

■   concatenate the item catalog group *name* with the enabled descriptive element values

■   concatenate the item catalog group *description* with the enabled descriptive element values

The profile option INV:Use catalog name in the item description determines the method used. Yes uses the catalog group name. No uses the catalog group description.

> **Additional Information:**   Profile Options in Oracle Inventory, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 8: Update Item Descriptions (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory)**

Do before anyone uses: **Items**

If you choose to build item descriptions from catalog group descriptions and enabled descriptive element values, you can use the following script to update all existing descriptions for items that have an assigned catalog group:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/upgrade/sql
```

For Release 10.5 and earlier:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invicgds.sql
```

For Release 10.6 and later:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Item Cataloging, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

17

Oracle Order Entry/Shipping

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Order Entry/Shipping (OE) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Order Entry/Shipping with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Order Entry/Shipping may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Order Entry/Shipping uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Order Entry/Shipping are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Planning your Upgrade

When planning the timing and implementation of your upgrade to Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Release 11, you need to consider the importance of completing open processes and clearing out interface tables, so that the data contained in them is not threatened by the upgrade process.

Run Oracle Receivables Upgrade Steps

If you use Oracle Receivables, make sure that all Oracle Receivables upgrade steps are run when you upgrade that product so that your Oracle Order Entry/Shipping application works correctly for Release 11.

Run Oracle Inventory Upgrade Steps

If you use Oracle Inventory, make sure that all Oracle Inventory upgrade steps are run when you upgrade that product so that your Oracle Order Entry/Shipping application works correctly for Release 11.

Upgrading FlexBuilder

In Release 10, you could create Accounting Flexfield code combinations automatically using the FlexBuilder feature. In Release 11, FlexBuilder has been replaced by the Oracle Workflow Account Generator to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

Before the upgrade, you need to review how Oracle Order Entry/Shipping uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for more information, and for the upgrade steps you may need to complete to set up and use the Account Generator.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Order Entry/Shipping for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Order Entry/Shipping	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ 1. Verify Profile Option Values Used in Upgrade	System Administrator
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 2. Complete All Picking Lines	Application Specialist (Oracle Shipping)

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Verify Profile Option Values Used in Upgrade

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user guide needed: **Oracle System Administrator's Guide/Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

This step is performed through Oracle System Administrator. The following Order Entry/Shipping profile options are used during the upgrade:

OE:Set of Books	Used to determine the currency code that will be stored on existing price lists, sales orders, and returns (RMAs). This profile option is set at the application level for Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.
OE:Item Validation Organization	Used for all inventory item validation and upgrade. All orderable items must be defined in this organization. This profile option is set at the site level.

Verify that the settings of these profile options are appropriate for your installation using the Oracle System Administrator System Profile Values window.

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 2: Complete All Picking Lines

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Shipping)**

User's guide or reference manual needed: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

You can run a script to ensure that all picking lines have passed successfully through the system. There must not be any open or pending picking headers, or any lines eligible for the Receivables or Inventory interfaces.

If you are upgrading from 10.6 or 10.7:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshdlupg.sql
```

If you are upgrading any release prior to 10.6:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <OE username>/<OE password> @wshdlupg.sql
```

A sample of the output might look like this:

```
There are currently 221 open or pending picking headers in your system. You have
to run the Update Shipping program to close those picking headers.
```

If you do not close all picking lines before upgrading, you cannot complete them later.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Order Entry/Shipping, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Order Entry/Shipping	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.	
❏ 1. Create Receivables Indices	System Administrator
❏ 2. Update Invoice Source for Receivables Interface (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Shipping)
❏ 3. Insert Receivables System Option Records (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Order Entry)
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.	
❏ 4. Provide Entry Status Default for Copied Orders (Recommended)	Database Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.

Step 1: Create Receivables Indexes

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

User's guide or reference manual needed: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping**

Perform this step if you are installing Oracle Order Entry/Shipping for the first time OR if you are upgrading an existing installation of Oracle Applications but did not license Oracle Order Entry/Shipping prior to Release 11.

The script oeordcin.sql creates indexes on the Oracle Receivables table RA_ CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL. The script displays storage and sizing information for an existing index on this table, and it displays recommendations for how to size the new indexes using this information.

For each index, the script prompts you for storage and sizing parameters. Enter values that are appropriate for your installation of Oracle Applications.

```
$ cd $OE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AR username>/<AR password> @oeordcin.sql
```

Here is an example of the script's output:

```
Preparing to create index SO_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_N1 ....
Please refer to the following numbers while entering values
for storage parameters to create index SO_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_N1.
Set PCT_FREE to 10 to allow growth.


INITIAL_EXTENT     NEXT_EXTENT  MAX_EXTENTS
-------------------------------------------
61440              16384           50


INI_TRANS          MAX_TRANS     PCT_FREE  TABLESPACE_NAME
----------------------------------------------------------
2                  255              0         USER_INDEX


Enter value for initial_extent:  <value>
Enter value for next_extent:  <value>
Enter value for max_extents:  <value>
Enter value for ini_trans:  <value>
Enter value for max_trans  <value>
Enter value for pct_free:  <value>
Enter value for tablespace_name:  <value>


Index created.


Preparing to create index SO_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_N2 ....
Please refer to the following numbers while entering values
for storage parameters to create index SO_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_N2.


INITIAL_EXTENT     NEXT_EXTENT  MAX_EXTENTS
-------------------------------------------
61440              16384           50


INI_TRANS          MAX_TRANS     PCT_FREE  TABLESPACE_NAME
----------------------------------------------------------
2                  255              0         USER_INDEX


We suggest that you use a smaller value (about half what is
displayed) for INITIAL_EXTENT and set PCT_FREE to 10 to create the index.


Enter value for initial_extent:  <value>
Enter value for next_extent:  <value>
Enter value for max_extents:  <value>
Enter value for ini_trans:  <value>
```

```
Enter value for max_trans  <value>
Enter value for pct_free:  <value>
Enter value for tablespace_name:  <value>

Index created.
```

Step 2: Update Invoice Source for Receivables Interface (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Shipping)**

User's guide or reference manual needed: **See step description**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping and the Receivables Interface**

This step is performed using Oracle Receivables.

> **Attention:** Complete this step before you run the Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Receivables Interface. If you do not have Oracle Receivables installed, or do not use the Receivables Interface in any of your order cycles, you do not need to perform this step.

You need to update your invoice sources for the Receivables Interface to include data in the AutoInvoice Data Validation zone of the Invoice Sources form in Oracle Receivables. You must have at least one invoice source defined to interface order information to Oracle Receivables.

> **Additional Information:** Receivables Interface (Prerequisites), *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide;* Transaction Batch Sources, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

You need to update your invoice sources for the Receivables Interface to include data in the new AutoInvoice Data Validation zone of the Define Invoice Sources form in Oracle Receivables (\ Navigate Setup Invoice Source).

You must have at least one Invoice Source defined to interface order information to Oracle Receivables.

> **Additional Information:**   Receivables Interface, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide;* Integrating Oracle Order Entry/Shipping with Oracle Receivables, *Oracle Financials and Oracle Government Financials Implementation Manual;* Integrating Oracle Order Entry/Shipping with Oracle Receivables, *Oracle Manufacturing, Distribution, Sales and Server Open Interfaces Manual*; Invoice Batch Sources, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 3: Insert Receivables System Option Records (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Order Entry)**

User's guide or reference manual needed: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide/Oracle Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables and Oracle Order Entry/Shipping**

Consider performing this step only if you use Oracle Receivables for its Customer and Tax modules. If that is true, you may want to run the following script to save data entry effort. It inserts a complete record for Receivables system options.

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @arsedsp.sql
```

You will need to set up profile, customer, and salesperson system options in the System Options window in Oracle Receivables before you define customer profile classes, customers, and salespersons for use with Oracle Order Entry/Shipping.

> **Additional Information:**   Setting Up Receivables, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Order Entry/Shipping listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 4: Provide Entry Status Default for Copied Orders (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Copy Orders form**

You can run a SQL*Plus script, OEXCPORB.pls, to provide a default for the Entry Status field on the Sales Orders form for orders that you copy from returns using the Copy Orders form. Before running the script, you need to modify it (with a text editor) to determine which value will be the default. Choose a valid action result value for the Enter cycle action. The seeded values include Booked, Entered, and Partial, but you can use any other action result that you have defined.

We recommend that you use Entered, and that you copy the script before modifying it. The script is located in the $OE_TOP/admin/sql directory. Line 69 in the file appears as follows:

```
define Entry_Status = "" (CHAR)
```

Enter the default value between the double quotes on line 69. For example:

```
define Entry_Status = "Entered" (CHAR)
```

Run the script after you have modified and saved it:

```
$ cd $OE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @OEXCPORB.pls
```

18

Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables

This chapter tells how to prepare your Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables (AP) application for an upgrade from Release 10.4, 10.5, 10.6, or 10.7 to Release 11 of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables with AutoInstall.

> **Note:** Oracle Payables and Oracle Public Sector Payables use multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare your Oracle Payables application for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

This documentation accommodates both character-mode and GUI upgrades. References to documentation are to the appropriate version—character-mode or GUI.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables	
Step	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 1. Complete Outstanding Payment Batches	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ 2. Update Duplicate Expense Report Types and Duplicate Expense Items	Technical Specialist
❏ 3. Upgrade Supplier and Supplier Site Bank Data for Multiple Supplier Banks	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables.	
❏ 4. Examine Zero-Amount Invoices	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Complete Outstanding Payment Batches

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) Reference Manual, Release 10, Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) User's Guide, Release 10SC**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Complete or abort all outstanding payment batches.

In character mode, navigate to the Cancel Payment Batch form to see if there are any outstanding payment batches. You can use the Confirm Payment Batch form to confirm or cancel a payment batch.

In GUI, navigate to the Payment Batches window to check for in-process payment batches. Complete or cancel any in-process batches using the Actions window.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Additional Information:** Cancel Payment Batch and Confirm Payment Batch (*Oracle Payables Reference Manual, Release 10* or *Oracle Government Payables Reference Manual, Release 10*; *Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10SC or Oracle Government Payables User's Guide, Release 10SC)*

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 2: Update Duplicate Expense Report Types and Duplicate Expense Report Items

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

> **Warning:** Releases 10.6 and later do not allow duplicate expense report types and duplicate expense items for an expense report type. If you have duplicate expense report types, or if you have duplicate expense items for an expense report type, your upgrade will fail if you have not performed this upgrade step.

Move to the pre-upgrade directory and run the following script to identify any duplicate expense report types:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apselaer.sql
```

Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables produces a file called apselaer.lst, which lists the REPORT_TYPE and EXPENSE_REPORT_ID for all duplicate expense report types. If there are no duplicate expense report types listed in this file, proceed to the second part of this step where you identify any duplicate expense

items for an expense report type. If there are any expense report types listed in this file, you need to update them. Do this by moving to the pre-upgrade directory and running the following script for each duplicate expense report type listed in this file:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apupdaer.sql
```

This script prompts you for the following values:

Expense_Report_ID	Appears on the apselaer.lst file you created earlier.
New_Report_Type	Enter the new name of the expense report type.

Rerun this script for each duplicate expense report type on the apselaer.lst. Verify that you have entered a unique report type for each duplicate expense report type by moving to the pre-upgrade directory and rerunning the following script:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apselaer.sql
```

You have finished with this part of this step once the script does not produce any duplicate expense report types in the apselaer.lst file.

To perform the second part of this upgrade step—identifying and updating any duplicate expense items for an expense report type—move to the pre-upgrade directory and run the following script to identify any duplicate expense report items for an expense report type:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apselerp.sql
```

Payables produces a file called apselerp.lst, which lists the EXPENSE_REPORT_ID, PARAMETER_ID, and any duplicate expense items (LINE_TYPE_LOOKUP_CODE) for an expense report type. If there are no duplicate expense items for your expense report types listed in this file, you are finished with this upgrade step. If there are any duplicate expense items for your expense report types listed in this file, you need to update them. Do this by moving to the pre-upgrade directory and running the following script for each duplicate expense item listed in this file:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apupderp.sql
```

This script prompts you for the following values:

Parameter_ID	Printed on the apselerp.lst.

New_Expense_Item   Enter the new name of the expense item.

Rerun this script for each duplicate expense item on the apselerp.lst. Verify that you have entered a unique expense item for each duplicate expense item by moving to the pre-upgrade directory and rerunning the following script:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apselerp.sql
```

You are finished with this upgrade step once the script does not produce any duplicate expense items in the apselerp.lst file.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

Step 3: Upgrade Supplier and Supplier Site Bank Data for Multiple Supplier Banks

Perform if upgrading from: **All Release 10 levels**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

User must log off this application: **No**

Complete this step only if you have existing supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information. Before Release 11, you could enter information for a single bank for each supplier or supplier site. In Release 11, we have enabled the Multiple Supplier Banks feature for all suppliers. You can now enter the Banks and Bank Accounts windows information for an unlimited number of banks for each supplier or supplier site.

In Release 10.6 (GUI), the Multiple Supplier Banks feature was optional. If you have enabled Multiple Supplier Banks in Production 16, you have already completed this step and can proceed to the next.

Use the apmsbrep.sql (or apmsbrp2.sql) report to review your existing supplier and supplier site bank information.

If you are upgrading from 10.4 or 10.5, the apmsbrp2.sql report output is a record of supplier bank information you have entered in Payables. You will no longer be able to access your existing supplier bank information after the upgrade. You can use the report output to manually enter your supplier bank information in the Banks and Bank Accounts windows after the upgrade.

If you are upgrading from 10.6 or later, Payables can automatically build supplier bank information for you. Use the apmsbrep.sql (or apmsbrp2.sql) report to review your existing supplier and supplier site bank information that will be transferred from the supplier tables to the banks tables. You can then update any supplier bank information that cannot be transferred unless you enter values for the following required columns:

- bank
- branch
- account number

If you are using character mode, use the Bank Information region of the Enter Vendor form. If you are using GUI, use the Bank region of the Suppliers window and the Bank and Customer region of the Supplier Sites window. You must complete the updates before the upgrade if you want to access your supplier bank data in Release 11. After the upgrade, you can no longer access bank information from the GUI Suppliers window.

To run the apmsbrep.sql (or apmsbrp2.sql) report:
Enter SQL*Plus through the database user you want to upgrade:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

If you are upgrading from 10.6 or earlier:
Enter the following:

```
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apmsbrp2.sql <PO username> \
    <PO password> <AP username> <AP password>
```

If you are upgrading from 10.7 or later:
Enter the following:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

If you are upgrading from 10.5 or earlier, use the report output (apmsbrp2.lst) to manually enter your supplier bank information in the Banks and Bank Accounts windows after the upgrade.

If you are upgrading from 10.6 or later, the report output, apmsbrep.lst (or apmsbrp2.lst), shows you what the upgrade is going to do. It shows the supplier bank information to be transferred, the bank records to be created, and the records that will not be transferred because they are missing required values. Review the report to see if you want to update any supplier bank information before it is

transferred. During the upgrade, the system transfers the supplier bank data from the PO_VENDORS and PO_VENDOR_SITES_ALL tables to the AP_BANK_ BRANCHES, AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS_ALL, and AP_BANK_ACCOUNT_USES_ ALL tables. You can review your supplier bank information in the Banks and Bank Accounts windows after the installation.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables. No one should be using the Oracle Applications system.

Step 4: Examine Zero-Amount Invoices
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

User must log off this application: **Yes**

Beginning with Release 10.5, Payables allows the payment of zero-amount payment schedule lines. Because Release 10.4 of Payables does not, an upgrade from Release 10.4 could result in a large number of zero-amount payment schedule lines being selected for payment during automatic payment processing. To prevent this, Payables automatically marks the invoices with zero-amount payment schedule lines as cancelled.

You can run the following script to display all zero-amount invoices that will be cancelled during the upgrade. Run the script from the pre-upgrade directory.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @ap877a15.sql
```

Examine the file ap877a15.lst that the script produces. After reviewing this report, you may choose to mark as an exception any zero-amount invoice that you do not want to cancel. To mark an invoice as an exception run script ap877b15.sql. Run the script from the pre-upgrade directory.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @ap877b15.sql
```

This script prompts you for an invoice ID, which you will see in the first column of the report. When you run the script for an invoice, the invoice is marked as an exception. Run the script for each invoice you want to mark as an exception.

To confirm the invoices you marked as exceptions, rerun the following script from the pre-upgrade directory.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @ap877a15.sql
```

Following the upgrade, invoices you marked as exceptions are available to be selected as zero-amount invoices in the next automatic payment batch. Invoices you did not mark as exceptions are cancelled.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade your Oracle Payables application, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ 1. Drop Unnecessary Indexes	Database Administrator
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Payables or Oracle Public Sector Payables.	
❏ 2. Define New Payables Options	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 3. Adjust Zero Tolerance Values for Invoice Tolerances	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 4. Remodify Payment Formats	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)
❏ 5. Enter Supplier Bank Information	Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Drop Unnecessary Indexes

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) User's Guide, Release 10SC, Oracle Payables (or Public Sector Payables) User's Guide, Release 11**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

You should perform this step to enhance performance and save space in your Oracle Payables application.

> **Attention:** Do not perform this step if you use Combined Basis Accounting.

If you use Accrual Basis Accounting, move to the admin directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the CASH_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

If you use Cash Basis Accounting, move to the upgrade directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the ACCRUAL_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Additional Information:** Accounting Methods and Payables Options *(Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10SC or 11) (Oracle Government Payables User's Guide Release 10SC or Oracle Public Sector Payables User's Guide Release 11)*

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to your Oracle Payables application.

Step 2: Define New Payables Options
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (or Public Sector Payables) User's Guide, Release 11**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

Your Oracle Payables application provides many new and enhanced features that you can enable in the Payables Options window. Some of these new options are:

- Cash Clearing
- Options in the Invoice Tax Region
- Options in the Withholding Tax Region
- Options in the Tax Calculation Region
- Bank Charge Bearer
- Use Bank Charges
- Allow Remit-to Account Override
- Journal Entry Creation — Rounding
- Rounding Account
- Enforce Tax From Account
- Tax Name Defaults

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Attention:** If the Validate Tax From PO Payables option is enabled before the upgrade, Payables will not automatically set the Tax Name Defaults hierarchy. You must set up your Tax Name Defaults hierarchy manually after the upgrade by choosing values in the Tax Name Defaults region of the Payables Options window. Note that in Release 11, the Validate Tax From PO option was renamed to Enforce Tax From PO and will be automatically set to the value you had set for Validate Tax From PO.

> **Additional Information:** Payables Options *(Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11) (Oracle Public Sector Payables User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 3: Adjust Zero Tolerance Values for Invoice Tolerances
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, 10.6**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) User's Guide, Release 10SC, Oracle Payables (or Public Sector Payables) User's Guide, Release 11**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

If you are upgrading and have entered a value for each tolerance you have enabled in the Invoice Tolerances window, you can omit this step.

This step is necessary only if you are upgrading from Release 10.6 or earlier, and have used null tolerances to indicate zero tolerance. You need to change each null tolerance to 0. In Production 16 and later, a null value for the tolerance field indicates infinite tolerance, and a value of 0 indicates zero tolerance. If you have zero tolerance, Payables applies a hold if you have any variance, no matter how small the variance is. If you have an infinite tolerance, Payables will not apply a hold, no matter how large the variance is.

To adjust tolerance values:
1. Navigate to the Invoice Tolerances window. Choose Setup>Invoice>Tolerances from the Navigator menu.
2. For each enabled tolerance field that is blank, and that should have a zero tolerance, enter 0 to indicate that the tolerance is zero.

If you have previously entered a very large number in a tolerance field to indicate infinite tolerance, you can make the field null or disable the tolerance. However, if you choose to leave the large number, there will be no change in functionality.

3. Save your work.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

Step 4: Remodify Payment Formats

Perform if upgrading from: **All Release 10 levels**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) User's Guide, Release 10SC, Oracle Payables (or Public Sector Payables) User's Guide, Release 11**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

You do not need to perform this step if you are upgrading from an English-only installation and have never renamed or modified the attributes of any Payables seeded payment format.

In Release 11, we improved the architecture of each of the seeded payment formats. If you are using modified pre-Release 11 payment formats, you need to replace them with modified Release 11 formats. A payment format may have been modified in one of the following ways:

■   You renamed it in the Payment Formats window.

■   You changed its attributes in the Payment Formats window.

■   Oracle translated the name for a non-English version of Payables.

Perform this step to ensure continued support of your Payables seeded payment formats in future releases and to ensure that all the payment formats you use are based on Release 11 payment formats and that they have the same names and attributes as the payment formats you used before the upgrade.

During the upgrade, the system identifies each Payables seeded payment format for which you need to perform this step and adds a @ symbol to the beginning of its name. Run the following script to create a list of all modified payment formats assigned to payment documents:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

This script produces the apucfrpt.lst report, which lists the following values for each modified payment format that you have assigned to a payment document: Bank, Branch, Account, Payment Document, and Payment Format.

For each payment format on the report, perform the following steps. If you had changed attributes or the name of a payment format, then recreate the modified payment format using a Release 11 payment format.

1. Open the Payment Formats window.

2. Query the name of the seeded (unmodified) payment format you had used to create your modified payment format.

3. Duplicate the attributes and name of the modified payment format.

4. Save your work.

5. Open the Payment Documents window of the Banks form.

6. Query the payment document to which you had assigned the modified payment format.

7. In the Payment Format field, delete the @ from the payment format name so that it matches the new Release 11-based payment format name.

8. Save your work.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Additional Information:** Setting Up Custom Formats, Payment Formats, and Defining and Maintaining Payables Payment Documents (*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10SC* or *Release 11*; *Oracle Government Payables User's Guide, Release 10SC* or *Oracle Public Sector Payables User's Guide, Release 11*)

Step 5: Enter Supplier Bank Information
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Payables)**

Reference manual needed: **Oracle Payables (or Public Sector Payables) User's Guide, Release 11**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Payables**

Perform this step only if you entered supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information and you want to access it in Payables after the upgrade.

During step 3 in the Before the Upgrade steps, you submitted the apmsbrp2.sql report to get a list of the bank information you had entered in the Bank Information and Site Bank Information regions of the Enter Vendor form. Use the report output, apmsbrp2.lst, as a reference to enter the supplier bank information in the Banks and Bank Accounts windows in Payables.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books, perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Additional Information:** Defining Supplier Bank Accounts (*Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11*; *Oracle Public Sector Payables User's Guide, Release 11*)

19

Oracle Projects

This chapter tells you how to prepare Oracle Projects (PA) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Projects with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Projects may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Projects uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Projects.

> **Note:** As of Release 10.7, the product formerly known as Oracle Project Accounting is now named Oracle Projects. References in this document to releases prior to Release 10.7 use the original name, Oracle Project Accounting.

Determining Which Version You are Upgrading From

Each upgrade step in this section contains a line that specifies the version(s) of Oracle Projects or Oracle Project Accounting to which it applies. Determine which version of Oracle Projects or Oracle Project Accounting you currently have installed and which one is the base for your upgrade.You can omit any step that does not list the version that you are upgrading from.

Table 19–1   Oracle Projects Versions

Version	GUI/char	Description
3.0	char	The production release on Release 10.4
3.1	char	The production release on Release 10.5 and 10.6
4.1	GUI	The production release on Release 10.7 (Production 16 and 16.1)
11	GUI	The production release on Release 11

Note: An upgrade from Version 4.0, the controlled implementation release, to Release 11, is not supported. To upgrade to Release 11 from Version 4.0, you must first complete an upgrade to Release 10.7 (Version 4.1), and then upgrade to Release 11.

Upgrading FlexBuilder

In Release 10, you could create Accounting Flexfield code combinations automatically using the FlexBuilder feature. In Release 11, FlexBuilder is replaced by the Oracle Workflow Account Generator to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

Before the upgrade, review how Oracle Projects uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for information on the options you need to consider, and the upgrade steps you may need to complete to set up and use the Account Generator.

Note: References to FlexBuilder apply to Oracle Projects only with respect to project transactions that interface with Oracle Payables and Oracle Purchasing. For other purposes, Oracle Projects continues to use AutoAccounting in Release 11.

AR Seed Data Changes

To interface draft invoices to Oracle Receivables, Oracle Projects predefines a context for the AR Transaction flexfield. Oracle Projects also pre-seeds a batch source, transaction types, and grouping and ordering rules for Oracle Projects invoices in Oracle Receivables.

In earlier versions of Oracle Projects, the seeded values contained the prefix PA (for Project Accounting). This data was not translatable and not automatically created for a new operating unit in a multiple organization implementation. To overcome these issues, changes have been made to the Oracle Projects seed data in Oracle Receivables.

Table 19–2   Seed Data Changes

Seed Data Type	Old Name	New Name
Transaction Flexfield Context	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Batch Source	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Transaction Type	PA Invoice	Projects Invoice
Transaction Type	PA Credit Memo	Projects Credit Memo
Grouping Rules	PA Grouping Rule	Projects Grouping Rule
Ordering Rules	PA Ordering Rule	Projects Ordering Rule

All customers performing a fresh installation of Oracle Projects with Release 11 will see only the new data. If you are upgrading to Release 11, these seed data changes do not apply to your system. However, you will see the new values (PROJECTS) as well as the old values (PA) that you are accustomed to seeing. You must continue to use *only* the old values. If you create a new operating unit in Release 11, the new data is replicated for the new unit.

Important Upgrade Preparation Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Projects are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make before you begin your upgrade. You'll find detailed instructions for completing each step in the Preparing to Upgrade section of this chapter.

Preparing for Standard Report Submission Upgrade

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects uses Standard Report Submission (SRS) to run all reports and processes — it no longer supports its own Run Reports and Programs forms and tables. You must migrate your report and process security using process responsibility types in Oracle Project Accounting to request groups in SRS. If you

have defined custom reports and processes, you must also upgrade them to use the SRS functionality.

Reviewing Top Tasks Having at Least One Unauthorized Subtask

From Version: 3.0

Oracle Projects now performs authorization on the top tasks instead of the lowest tasks. You need to review the task authorization of current lowest tasks in preparation for the upgrade to top task authorization.

Creating New Indexes for Oracle Projects (Recommended)

From Version: 3.0

You can choose to create new indexes on large tables as part of the upgrade preparation steps to save processing time during the upgrade.

Verifying Project Dates

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

You must verify that projects with a completion date also have a start date, and you must correct all exceptions.

Verifying Project Customer Contributions

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

You must verify that the sum of the customer contributions is equal to 100% for every contract project with contributing customers and correct all exceptions.

Verifying Budget Data

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Before you upgrade to the enhanced budget structure, you must verify that your existing budget data is correct and correct all exceptions.

Processing Expenditure Items and Cost Distribution Lines

From Version: 3.0

You must cost all expenditure items and interface the cost distribution lines. Plan your upgrade such that you have processed most of the data in your normal processing cycle. You can then avoid long processing times when you run these processes just before you begin the upgrade.

You can process expenditure items and cost distribution lines just before you begin the upgrade to process any outstanding data. This should take a short time if you have already processed most of the data.

Completing Transfer and Tieback Processes
From Version: 3.0

You must transfer and tie back costs, revenue, and invoices to ensure that the data in the interface tables is not threatened. Plan your upgrade so that you have processed most of the data in your normal processing cycle. You can then avoid long processing times when you run these processes just before you begin the upgrade.

You interface costs, revenue, and invoices just before you begin the upgrade to process any outstanding data. This should take a short time if you have already processed most of the data.

Clearing the Transaction Interface Table
From Version: 30, 31, or 4.1

You must clear all records from the transaction interface table PA_TRANSACTION_ INTERFACE_ALL before the upgrade begins.

Backing Up Client Extension Packages and Views
From Version: 3.1 or 4.1

If you have implemented client extension packages and views, you must back up the packages and views.

Important Upgrade Finishing Steps

The Oracle Projects upgrade includes many time-consuming scripts and new implementation steps in the upgrade finishing steps. You should allocate some time to run these scripts, handle any exceptions, and implement the new features. You'll find detailed instructions for completing these steps in the After the Upgrade section of this chapter.

Upgrading to Standard Report Submission
From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects uses Standard Report Submission to run all reports and processes—it no longer supports its own Run Reports and Processes forms and tables. You must migrate the report security in Oracle Projects and your custom reports and process definitions to the Standard Report Submission functionality.

Implementing Oracle Personal Time and Expense

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Online expenditure entry, in which employees enter their own timecards and expense reports, is now performed using Oracle Personal Time and Expense. If you used online expenditure entry in previous versions of Oracle Project Accounting, you must now implement Oracle Personal Time and Expense.

Performing Upgrade Steps for Burden Processing

From Version: 3.0

Oracle Projects now supports an enhanced burdening model. You must manually upgrade your existing burden cost codes and burden cost multipliers to the new burden implementation data. By performing these steps manually, you can choose simply to map your existing implementation to the new structure or take advantage of the new burdening functionality.

The upgrade finishing section lists the steps that you must perform to implement the new burden processing. Your burden implementation data from Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0 is not automatically upgraded. You must perform these steps if you burdened labor costs in Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0.

Correcting Exceptions for Missing Employee Assignments

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects now requires that every expenditure item incurred by an employee have a valid job ID associated with it. You must correct any exceptions encountered during the upgrade.

Implementing Resource Lists

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

You must review the resource lists created during the upgrade. You may also define additional resource lists. Resource lists are used in budgeting and project status summarization.

Verifying the Upgrade and Implementing Enhanced Budget Model

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

To ensure a successful migration to the enhanced budget model, you must:

- verify the budget upgrade
- update and implement new budget implementation data
- define the budget line descriptive flexfield

Implementing Project Templates

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects supports project templates for easier, faster project setup. You must review the project templates created during the upgrade. You may change these templates or define new project templates.

Migrating to Enhanced Project Status Summarization Model

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects supports a new summarization model with new tables that replace the project accumulation and employee accumulation tables. You must upgrade the data and transition any custom reports and processes to this new model. You have the choice of running the old accumulation and the new summarization until you have migrated all your custom reports and processes to the new model.

Implementing Capital Projects Functionality

From Version: 3.0 or 3.1

Oracle Projects now supports capital projects and the integration of capitalized costs to Oracle Assets. You may choose to implement this new functionality.

Updating Billing Extensions with Changes in predefined Procedures

From Version: 3.1 or 4.1

The names of the public procedures in Oracle Projects billing extensions have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your bill extensions, then you must modify the extensions to use the new procedure names.

Converting Overtime Calculation Program to PL/SQL

From Version: 3.0, 3.1, or 4.1

The Oracle Projects Overtime Calculation program has been rewritten in PL/SQL for Release 11. If you have implemented the this program, you must rewrite your existing Overtime Calculation program in PL/SQL.

Reinstalling Client Extension Packages and Views

From Version: 3.1 or 4.1

If you have implemented client extension packages and views, you must reinstall the packages and recreate the views after the upgrade.

Batch Commit Sizes

AutoInstall prompts you to enter a batch commit size for the upgrade. If you do not, AutoInstall uses a default batch commit size, which is set small to accommodate systems with small rollback segments.

> **Additional Information:** See Batch Commit Sizes in the Preface of this manual.

Batch Commit Sizes in Driver Files

The following driver files define commit size parameters for one or more SQL*Plus scripts. All driver files are in $PA_TOP/admin/driver. Your ORACLE DBA can determine the appropriate commit size for each script given the size of your rollback segments.

The driver file paupg.drv uses the parameter &batchsize (the batch commit size you enter) for the following SQL*Plus scripts.

Version	Scripts
3.0	PAXIUPEB.pls PAXIUPOB.pls
3.0 or 3.1	pa4uex02.sql pa4uex05.sql pa4ugu02.sql pa4ugucp.sql pa4uprte.sql

Version	Scripts
3.0, 3.1, or 4.1	pa11u202.sql pa11u211.sql pa11u213.sql pa11ubcl.sql pa411upc.sql pa411uvu.sql
4.1	pa11u212.sql pa11u214.sql

The upgrade driver file papar.drv sets the commit size for the following SQL*Plus scripts, which are used to upgrade from version 3.0:

- PAXCCDL1.pls

- PAXCCDL2.pls

- PAXCCDL3.pls

- PAXCCDL4.pls

- PAXCCDL5.pls

- PAXCCDL6.pls

- PAXCCDL7.pls

- PAXCCDL8.pls

- PAXCUPEI.pls

Batch Commit Sizes in Upgrade Scripts

The following SQL*Plus scripts require commit size parameters at runtime. Your ORACLE DBA can determine the appropriate commit size for each script given the size of your rollback segments. The following scripts are in $PA_TOP/admin/sql.

Version	Scripts
3.0	pa31upr1.pls pa31ubc3.sql pa31uev1.pls

Version	Scripts
3.0 or 3.1	pa4fixpr.sql
	pa4uex02.sql
	pa4ugucp.sql
	pa4uivev.sql
	pa4uuspf.sql

Understanding the Upgrade to the Enhanced Budget Model

This section describes the budgeting features provided in Oracle Projects, along with information on how your existing budgets in version 3.0 or 3.1 are upgraded to the new budgeting model in Release 11. (This is also the budgeting model in Version 4.)

The descriptions of new budgeting features assume knowledge about the basics of budgeting in Oracle Projects prior to version 4. We include references that point to sections of the *Oracle Projects User's Guide* (Release 10SC or later) for more information about specific budgeting topics.

New Features of Enhanced Budgeting

Oracle Projects now includes the following budgeting features to help you manage budgets and track your project's status:

- Time-Phased Budgets

  You can establish comprehensive, time-phased budgets by currency amount or unit of measure for project cost, revenue, and quantity categories, such as labor hours, machine hours, and other expenses.

- Multiple Budget Versions

  Oracle Projects records the history of all budget versions. You create a new version each time you baseline your budget.

- User-Defined Budget Types

  You can define your own budget types to identify different kinds of budgets.

- Flexible Budget Categories

  You can define budget categories by employee, job, organization, supplier, expenditure type, event type, expenditure category, revenue category, or combinations of these using resource lists.

- Budget Amounts for Quantity and Raw Cost

You can budget non-labor quantities and raw costs, in addition to the previously supported labor hours and burdened cost amounts.

- Descriptive Flexfields for Budget Lines

  You can define and enter descriptive flexfields for budget lines.

- User-Defined Budget Calculation

  You can calculate budgeted cost and revenue amounts from budgeted quantities based on user-defined rules.

- Budget Control

  Different users who require different types of budgets can enter the budgets independently. You can also budget cost and revenue values at different levels in the work breakdown structure (WBS).

- Change Reasons

  You can enter a change reason for each budget version and budget line.

Comparison of Old and New Budget Models
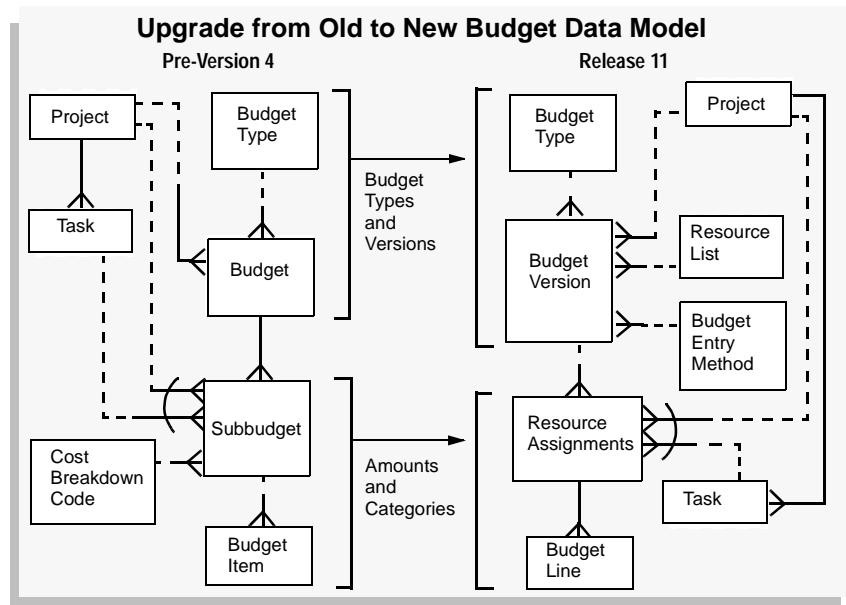
The following table compares features that are different in the old (pre-version 4) and new budget models:

> **Additional Information:** Defining Resource Lists Budgeting Project Summary Amounts *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Feature	Pre-Version 4 (Versions 3.0 and 3.1)	Release 11
Time-Phased Budgets	You enter budget amounts for the project-at-completion. There is no time-phased budget support.	You can enter time-phased budgets by PA period, GL period, or date range. Or, you may choose to enter project-at-completion amounts. The dates are held at the budget line.
Budget Types	Budget types identify 3 different versions of the approved budget (Draft, Baseline, Original) and a different kind of budget (Forecast). The budget types are predefined.	Budget types identify the kinds of budget. Budget versions are used to identify the versions of each type of budget. You can define your own budget types.
Budget Versions	Oracle Project Accounting maintains three budget versions for the approved budget, and one version for the forecast budget. See description under Budget Types.	Oracle Projects maintains an unlimited number of versions for each budget type. A new version is created each time you baseline the budget.
Budget Categories	You can budget cost by five predefined categories (referred to as *cost breakdown codes*) and revenue by revenue category.	You can define flexible budget categories using resources and resource lists.

Feature	Pre-Version 4 (Versions 3.0 and 3.1)	Release 11
Categorized and Uncategorized Amounts	You can enter categorized and uncategorized amounts. Categorized amounts are held in the PA_BUDGET_ITEMS table. Uncategorized amounts are held in the PA_SUBBUDGETS table.	You can enter categorized and uncategorized amounts. All amounts are held in the PA_BUDGET_LINES table. If the budget is uncategorized, it is entered using the predefined, uncategorized resource list named None with a resource named None.
Cost vs. Revenue Budgets	One budget can contain both cost and revenue amounts.	Each budget is either a cost budget or a revenue budget based on the budget type.
Quantity and Raw Cost Amounts	You budget labor hours and burdened cost for cost budgets.	You can budget non-labor quantities and raw costs, in addition to labor hours and burdened cost amounts for cost budgets.
Descriptive Flexfields	You can enter descriptive flexfield data for the project budget and the task budget.	You can enter descriptive flexfield data for the budget version and the budget line.
Budget Entry Method	You determine the way you want to enter the budget as you go along. There are no systematic controls on how you can enter the budget.	You select how you want to enter the budget by selecting a budget entry method. The budget entry method controls: 1. WBS level of the budget 2. budget time period, if any 3. whether the budget is categorized by resource 4. which amount fields may be entered
When Budget Rows are Created	Upon project creation, Oracle Projects creates a row in the PA_BUDGETS table for each budget type for the project. In addition, every project and task has a row in the PA_SUBBUDGETS table for each budget type, upon project and task creation.	The rows in the budget tables are created only when you enter a budget for the budget type for the project.
Summarized Amounts By Project and Task	Summarized budget amounts are held for the project and all tasks in the work breakdown structure in the PA_SUBBUDGETS table. You can determine whether the amounts are summarized or directly entered, based on the ROLLUP_FLAG column in the PA_SUBBUDGETS table.	Summarized amounts are only held at the project level in the PA_BUDGET_VERSIONS table. The new project summarization process maintains summarized budget amounts for the project and all levels of tasks in the work breakdown structure for all baselined budget versions. See description under Comparing Actuals to Budgets.
Comparing Actuals to Budgets	You can compare actuals to budgets by comparing amounts in the project accumulation table to the amounts in the budget table. Oracle Project Accounting provided views upon which the View Project Status form and other reports are based.	You can compare actuals to budgets using the new project summarization tables, which hold summarized actual cost and revenue amounts, commitments, and budget amounts by project, every level of tasks in the work breakdown structure, and resource. (Previous project and employee accumulation tables are obsolete.) The summarized amounts are held for a project and task total, along with to-date amounts based on the summarization period type you define in implementation options. You can easily compare actual to budget amounts at the project, task, and resource levels. You can use the views and APIs that Oracle Projects provides for status reporting against this new model.

The following diagram shows how the old budget data model is upgraded to the new model. For more details, see the *Oracle Projects Technical Reference Manual.*

Upgrade from Old to New Budget Data Model

Rules Used to Upgrade Budget Data to New Model

The following rules govern the conversion of budgets to Release 11:

Rule #1: Four Predefined Budget Types

The upgrade process creates and uses the following predefined budget types:

- Approved Cost for Pre-Version 4 draft, original, and baseline budgets with cost amounts and/or labor hours (BUDGET_TYPE_CODE = AC)

- Approved Revenue for Pre-Version 4 draft, original and baseline budgets with revenue amounts (BUDGET_TYPE_CODE = AR)

- Forecast Cost for Pre-Version 4 forecast budgets with cost amounts and/or labor hours (BUDGET_TYPE_CODE = FC)

- Forecast Revenue for Pre-Version 4 forecast budgets with revenue amounts (BUDGET_TYPE_CODE = FR)

    Additional Information: Budget Types *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Rule #2: Budget Version, Budget Type, and Budget Status

The upgrade process creates the following rules when creating budget versions based on the budget type and status:

- A budget with budget type Draft or Forecast where Ready to Baseline = No is converted to a Draft version with status of Working (PA_BUDGET_VERSIONS.BUDGET_STATUS_CODE = W).

- A budget with budget type of Draft or Forecast where Ready to Baseline = Yes is converted to a Draft version with status of Submitted (PA_BUDGET_VERSIONS.BUDGET_STATUS_CODE = S).

- A budget with budget type of Original is converted to a historical version as the Original budget with the version number of 1 and budget status of Baselined (PA_BUDGET_VERSIONS.BUDGET_STATUS_CODE = B and CURRENT_ORIGINAL_FLAG = Y).

- A budget with budget type of Baseline is converted to the Current Baseline version with a version number 2 and budget status of Baselined (PA_BUDGET _VERSIONS.BUDGET_STATUS_CODE = B and CURRENT_FLAG = Y).
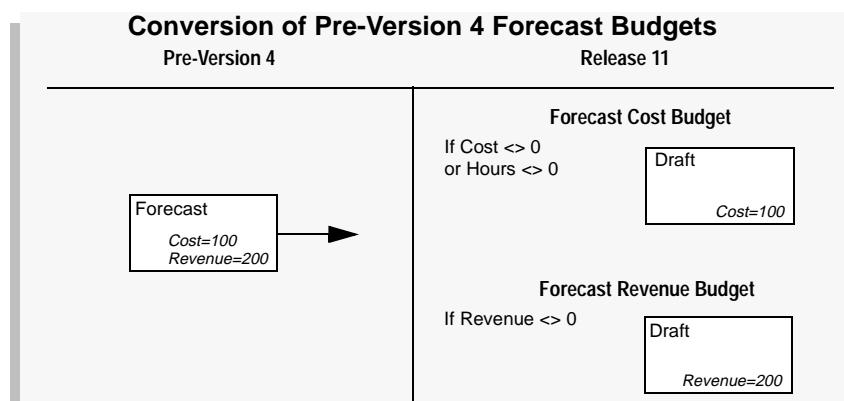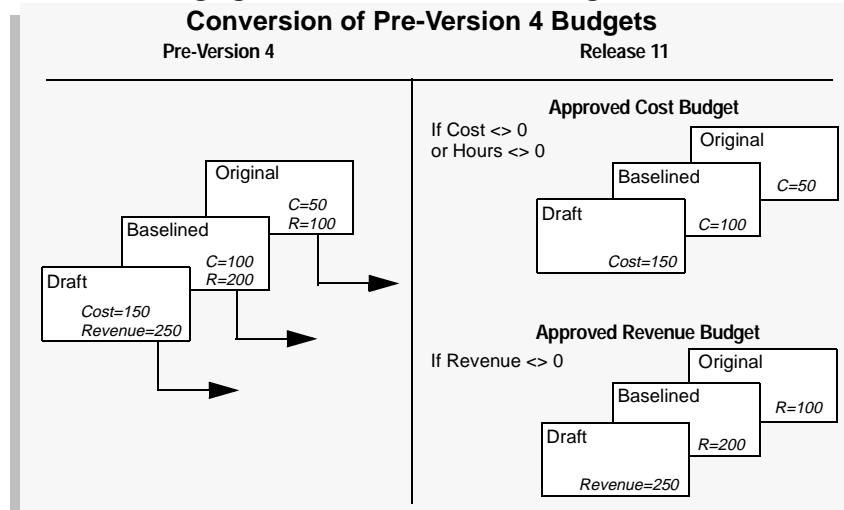
Rule #3: Budget with Cost and Revenue Amounts

If a Pre-Version 4 budget has both cost and revenue amounts, it is converted to two separate budgets, a Cost Budget and a Revenue Budget.

Rule #4: Budgets with All Zero Amounts

A budget with all zero amounts for labor hours, cost, and revenue is not converted. There may be many such budgets if you have never budgeted the project, since Oracle Project Accounting automatically created budget rows for all projects. The exception, such that a budget with zero amounts is converted, is a revenue budget that has customer funding. This budget is converted as a budget version with the mixed task level, uncategorized, non-time-phased budget entry method (PA_BUDGET_VERSIONS.BUDGET_ENTRY_METHOD_CODE = *M_UNCAT*).

The following figures illustrate Rules #1 through #4:

Conversion of Pre-Version 4 Budgets

Pre-Version 4   Release 11

Approved Cost Budget

If Cost <> 0
or Hours <> 0

Original   C=50
Baselined   C=100
Draft   Cost=150

Approved Revenue Budget

If Revenue <> 0

Original   R=100
Baselined   R=200
Draft   Revenue=250

Pre-Version 4 side:

Original   C=50   R=100
Baselined   C=100   R=200
Draft   Cost=150   Revenue=250

Conversion of Pre-Version 4 Forecast Budgets

Pre-Version 4   Release 11

Forecast Cost Budget

If Cost <> 0
or Hours <> 0

Draft   Cost=100

Forecast Revenue Budget

If Revenue <> 0

Draft   Revenue=200

Pre-Version 4 side:

Forecast   Cost=100   Revenue=200

Rule #5: Budget Entry Methods

The upgrade process uses the following predefined budget entry methods (BEM):

- Project Level Categorized is used for Pre-Version 4 budgets with project level budget items (budgets that have a cost breakdown code at the project level and for which amounts are entered by budget items).
  (PA_BUDGET_ENTRY_METHODS.BUDGET_ENTRY_METHOD_CODE = P_CAT)

- Project Level Uncategorized is used for Pre-Version 4 budgets with uncategorized amounts entered at the project level (budgets that do not have a cost breakdown code and for which amounts are entered only at the project level; thus, there are no budget items). (PA_BUDGET_ENTRY_METHODS.BUDGET_ENTRY_METHOD_CODE = P_UNCAT)

- Mixed Task Level Categorized is used for Pre-Version 4 budgets with at least one task with categorized budgets (budgets that have at least one task with a cost breakdown code and for which amounts are entered by budget items). (PA_BUDGET_ENTRY_METHODS.BUDGET_ENTRY_METHOD_CODE = M_CAT)

- Mixed Task Level Uncategorized is used for Pre-Version 4 budgets with uncategorized amounts entered for all task budgets (budgets with amounts entered at the task level and none of the tasks has a cost breakdown code; thus, there are no budget items). This budget entry method is also used for zero amount revenue budgets with customer funding. (PA_BUDGET_ENTRY_METHODS.BUDGET_ENTRY_METHOD_CODE = M_UNCAT)

> **Additional Information:**   Budget Entry Methods *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Rule #6: Resource List

Every budget version must have a resource list associated with it. The upgrade process creates and uses the following resource lists when creating budget versions. You can change the resource list names in an upgrade finishing step.

Table 19–3   Resource Lists

Resource List	Description of Resources grouped by Resource Groups
EXPCAT_TYPE	Expenditure Types grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_JOB_TYPE	Expenditure Types and Jobs grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_ORG	Organizations grouped by Expenditure Category
ORG_EXPCAT	Expenditure Categories grouped by Organization
EXPCAT_TYPE_ORG	Expenditure Types and Organizations grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_ORG_TYPE_JOB	Expenditure Types, Organizations, and Jobs grouped by Expenditure Category
REV_CATEG	Expenditure Types grouped by Revenue Category
None	Predefined resource list used for uncategorized budgets.

The resource list is selected based on the cost breakdown code(s) in the Pre-Version 4 budget. It is possible for one budget to have many cost breakdown codes if different tasks use different cost breakdown codes. The table lists the combination of cost breakdown codes that a budget may be defined with and then the corresponding resource list that is used for that budget.

Table 19–4   Cost Budgets

Pre-Version 4: Cost Breakdown Codes	Release 11: Resource List
Expenditure Category	EXPCAT_TYPE
Expenditure Type	EXPCAT_TYPE
Job	EXPCAT_JOB_TYPE
Organization	ORG_EXPCAT
Organization-Category	ORG_EXPCAT
Expenditure Category Expenditure Type	EXPCAT_TYPE
Expenditure Category Job Expenditure Type	EXPCAT_JOB_TYPE
Expenditure Category Organization Organization-Category	EXPCAT_ORG
Expenditure Category Organization Organization-Category Expenditure Type	EXPCAT_TYPE_ORG
Expenditure Category Organization Organization-Category Expenditure Type Job	EXPCAT_ORG_TYPE_JOB
No cost breakdown code	Uncategorized

Table 19–5   Revenue Budgets

Pre-Version 4: Categorized By	Release 11: Resource List
Revenue Category	REV_CATEG
No categories	Uncategorized

Additional Information: Resource Lists *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Rule #7: Resource Name

The Resource Name used in the budget line is derived based on the category and the cost breakdown code under which the Pre-Version 4 budget item was created.

Table 19–6   Resource Names

Pre-Version 4: Budget Amount Categorized By	Release 11: Resource Name on Budget Line
Expenditure Category	Expenditure Category
Expenditure Type	Expenditure Type
Job	Job
Organization	Organization
Organization-Category	If the project uses only this cost breakdown code, then Expenditure Category is the resource name on the budget line (under Organization as the resource group). If the project uses this cost breakdown code with others on the same budget, then Organization is the resource name on the budget line (under Expenditure Category as the resource group).
Revenue Category	Revenue Category
<None>	Unclassified

Rule #8: Cost Amounts and Labor Hours

All cost amounts are converted to burdened cost amounts, and the raw cost amounts are set to zero. The labor hours are upgraded to the quantity of the labor resource lines, and are summarized in the labor hours total on the budget version.

Rule #9: Budget Line Start and End Dates

Every budget line has a start and end date (or a period name, if time-phased by PA period or GL period). You can enter a non-time-phased budget. The non-time-phased budget line holds a start and end date to use for summarizing the budget into period-to-date buckets for project summary amounts.

When upgrading non-time-phased budgets entered in versions before Version 4, Oracle Projects first tries to use the start and completion date of the project and/or the task to set the dates on the budget lines. If the budget is at a task level and the task does not have both start and completion dates, then the upgrade process looks to the project dates.

For those projects that don't have both a start and completion date, you must specify defaults that Oracle Projects can use for the budget lines of such projects. You specify the default dates to use in an upgrade preparation step. These dates are used to summarize the budgets into period-to-date buckets. You may set the dates to both fall into the current period or a past period, or you can spread the budget across the year or to any range that you choose.

> **Additional Information:** Project Summary Amounts *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Rule #10: Descriptive Flexfields Data

During the budget upgrade, Oracle Projects copies the descriptive flexfield attribute values as follows:

- If the descriptive flexfield is entered at the project level, then the values are copied to the descriptive flexfield segments for the budget version (Budget Versions descriptive flexfield).

- If the descriptive flexfield is entered at the task level, then the values are copied to a budget line using the Unclassified resource. If the budget line does not exist for the task (because the task has all zero budget amounts), then a new budget line with zero amounts is created with the CMT Comment Created to Show DescFlex Data (Budget Lines descriptive flexfield).

As an upgrade finishing step, you must set up the descriptive flexfield segments for the budget versions and/or budget lines.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Projects for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for more information about step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Projects	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.	
❏ **1.** Run Reports for Labor Burdening Upgrade	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **2.** Prepare for Standard Report Submission Upgrade	System Administrator and Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **3.** Complete Transfer and Tieback of Cost, Revenue, and Invoices	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **4.** Clear the Transaction Interface Table	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❏ **5.** Review Top Tasks Having at Least One Unauthorized Subtask	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **6.** Create indexes for Oracle Projects Upgrade (Recommended)	Technical Specialist
❏ **7.** Update Task Level Credit Receivers	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **8.** Update Sales Credit Information	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **9.** Verify Project Dates	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **10.** Verify Project Customer Contributions	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **11.** Verify Budget Data	Technical Specialist
❏ **12.** Set Default Values For Budget Upgrade to Enhanced Budget Model	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **13.** Correct Data for Bug #492974 in Project Funding	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
Category 3: You should perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Projects.	
❏ **14.** Release Expense Report Batches for Transfer to Oracle Payables	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)

Oracle Projects	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **15.** Process Expenditure Items and Cost Distribution Lines	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **16.** Review and Update PA Period Names	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **17.** Save Custom Messages Used in Transaction Control Extensions	Technical Specialist
❏ **18.** Back Up Client Extension Packages and Views	Technical Specialist

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Run Reports for Labor Burdening Upgrade

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

During an upgrade finishing step, you will upgrade your current labor burdening implementation to cost plus processing. During that step, you need reports that list your current burdening implementation. These reports help you to map existing labor burdening data to cost plus processing data.

Run the following reports before you start the upgrade. Use the Submit Reports window.

- IMP: Burden Cost Codes

- IMP: Burden Cost Multipliers

- IMP: AutoAccounting Segment Rule Pairings (for the AutoAccounting function of Distribute Labor Costs)

Step 2: Prepare for Standard Report Submission Upgrade

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Applications Systems Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Oracle Projects uses Standard Report Submission (SRS) to run all reports and processes — it no longer supports its own Run Reports and Programs forms and tables. You must migrate your report and process security using process responsibility types in Oracle Project Accounting to request groups in SRS. If you have defined custom reports and processes, you must also upgrade them to use the SRS functionality.

You can begin planning and executing this transition at any time before the upgrade because Oracle Applications currently supports SRS. You may decide to perform the transition of custom programs to SRS as an upgrade finishing step in order to use some of the value sets that Oracle Projects has defined for its program parameters for your custom program parameters.

To transition to the SRS request group security by responsibility, you should review the assignment of programs to process responsibility types and the assignments of process responsibility types to responsibilities. Process responsibility types are replaced by request groups in SRS, and the assignment of process responsibility types to responsibilities are replaced by the assignment of request groups to responsibilities in SRS.

To migrate custom programs to SRS, you should first review their definitions in the PA_PROGRAMS and PA_PROGRAM_PARAMETERS tables. If you define your custom programs in SRS before the upgrade, be sure to define them in a custom application to ensure that they are retained after the upgrade.

To help with this transition to SRS, run the following reports. Use the Submit Reports window.

- IMP: Project Accounting Programs
- IMP: Process Responsibility Types

> **Additional Information:**   Overview of Standard Request
> Submission *(Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide)*

Step 3: Complete Transfer and Tieback of Cost, Revenue, and Invoices
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You should complete the transfer and tieback processes for all cost and revenue transactions and invoices as part of your normal processing cycle to process most of the data. Use the Submit Process window to run these requests.

You should also run these programs right before you begin the upgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed before the upgrade begins. This will ensure that the data in the interface table is not threatened during the upgrade.

Step 4: Clear the Transaction Interface Table
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You must import all pending transactions from the transaction interface table PA_ TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL into Oracle Projects. To do this, run the Transaction Import process. If there are any rejected records, you must fix them and run the Transaction Import process again, or delete them from the table. Use the Submit Request window to run this request.

You must also run the Transaction Import process just before you run the upgrade to ensure that all data in the interface table is processed before the upgrade begins. This will ensure that there is no data in the interface table that might be corrupted by the upgrade.

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 5: Review Top Tasks Having at Least One Unauthorized Subtask
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

You need to perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

Oracle Projects now performs authorization on the top tasks instead of the lowest tasks. It upgrades the task authorization level of current lowest level tasks to the top

task level. During the upgrade, any top task that has at least one lowest task that is not authorized for distribution or billing will automatically be set as unauthorized. For example, if a lowest task has Ready to Distribute or Ready to Bill set to No, the top task will automatically have that field set to No.

You can run a script that lists the top tasks that will be set to unauthorized.This script produces a report showing all lowest tasks on contract projects that are not authorized for revenue accrual and invoicing, along with their corresponding top tasks.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31caut.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa31caut.lst. After you have reviewed the file, update any subtasks that need authorizing in the Authorize Distribution form, and rerun the script. Repeat this cycle until you have updated all of the lowest tasks that you want to be authorized before the upgrade.

Step 6: Create Indexes for Oracle Projects Upgrade (Recommended)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User must log off this application: **No**

Run the following scripts to create new indexes used in the upgrade to Oracle Projects Release 11. These steps are recommended, but not required. You will save processing time during the upgrade if you create these indexes during the upgrade preparation. If you do not create the indexes, AutoInstall will create them for you.

You can start these scripts from different sessions if you want to run them concurrently. To run the scripts, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31cdli.sql <size of initial extent> \
<size of next extent> <tablespace name>
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31eind.sql <size of initial extent> \
<size of next extent> <tablespace name>
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31exnd.sql <size of initial extent> \
<size of next extent> <tablespace name>
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31rvnd.sql <size of initial extent> \
<size of next extent> <tablespace name>
```

For example:

```
$ sqlplus pa/pa @pa31cdli.sql 1M 1M SYSTEM
```

Step 7: Update Task Level Credit Receivers
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

In Oracle Projects, credit receivers are entered at the project level only. You need to move all task level credit receivers to the project level, or delete them. Run the following script to list all credit receivers entered at the task level:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31csc1.sql <PA username> <PA password>
```

This information is written to a file called pa31csc1.lst. After you have reviewed the file, update any credit receivers that need correcting in the Enter Credit Receivers form, and rerun the script. Repeat this process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

Step 8: Update Sales Credit Information
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In Oracle Projects, you can use credit receivers to transfer sales credit information to Oracle Receivables. If you do not want to send sales credit information to Oracle Receivables, you can omit this step.

If you want to implement this feature, read the following paragraphs and perform the upgrade steps that follow.

> **Additional Information:**   Salespersons and Credit Types
> *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

If you decide to send salesperson information to Oracle Receivables, you need to change the Allow Salesrep field in the Oracle Receivables Define Invoice Sources form for the source of PA INVOICES from No to Yes and then run the scripts that list the existing salespersons and credit types that you need to validate. The first script lists existing credit types in Oracle Projects that are not defined as credit types in Oracle Order Entry. The second script lists the credit receivers in Oracle Projects that are not defined as salespersons in Oracle Receivables. The employee full name (up to 30 characters) must exactly match the salesperson name.

To run the scripts, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31csc2.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <OE username> <OE password>
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31csc3.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <OE username> <OE password>
```

The information is written to files called pa31csc2.lst and pa31csc3.lst. After you have reviewed the files, update any credit types and salesperson that need correcting. You must define the listed credit types in Oracle Order Entry. You define the listed credit receivers as salespersons in Oracle Receivables. Repeat the process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

Step 9: Verify Project Dates
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Oracle Projects requires that projects without a start date cannot have a completion date. To identify projects that have a completion date but do not have a start date, run the following script:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4cpr01.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa4cpr01.lst. After you have reviewed the file, update the project dates in the Enter Projects form, and rerun the script. Repeat this process of checking for and updating the exceptions until none are listed.

Step 10: Verify Project Customer Contributions
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Oracle Projects requires that the sum of the customer contributions must equal 100% for every contract project with contributing customers. You must correct any projects that do not meet this condition.

To run the script that identifies these projects, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4cgu01.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa4cgu01.lst. After you have reviewed the file, update the project customer contributions in the Project Customer zone of the Enter Projects form and then rerun the script. Repeat this process of checking for and updating the exceptions until none are listed.

Step 11: Verify Budget Data
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User must log off this application: **No**

Before you upgrade to the new budget structure, you should verify that your existing budget data is correct so that it will be upgraded successfully. Run the following scripts to verify that your existing data has appropriate values in the ROLLUP_FLAG and COST_BREAKDOWN_CODE columns in the PA_SUBBUDGETS table and the LAST_UPDATE_BY column in the PA_BUDGETS table:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4ubuid.sql
```

Correct the listed exceptions. Repeat the process of checking for and correcting exceptions until none are listed.

Step 12: Set Default Values for Budget Upgrade to Enhanced Budget Model
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

User must log off this application: **No**

You must specify several defaults for Oracle Projects to use when you upgrade your projects budgets to the enhanced budgeting model. These defaults include:

- Default Start Date

- Default End Date

- Default Expenditure Category

Starting with Version 4, Oracle Projects supports time-phased budgets. Every budget line has a start and end date (or a period name, if time-phased by PA period or GL period). You can enter a non-time-phased budget, in which each line holds a start and end date to use for summarizing the budget into period-to-date buckets for project summary amounts.

When upgrading non-time-phased budgets entered before Version 4, Oracle Projects first tries to use the start and completion date of the project and/or the task to set the dates on the budget lines. If the budget is at a task level and the task does not have both start and completion dates, then the upgrade process looks to the project dates.

For those projects that don't have both a start and completion date, specify default dates that Oracle Projects can use for the budget lines of such projects. You specify the default dates in an upgrade preparation step. These dates are used to summarize the budgets into period-to-date buckets. You may set the dates to both fall into the current period or a past period, or, you can spread the budget across the year or to any range that you choose.

You must also specify a default expenditure category that is used to classify the budgets that are budgeted using the cost breakdown code of Organization, when other cost breakdown codes are also used for the same budget. In Oracle Projects Release 11, all budgets are categorized by a resource list, which can be grouped by Expenditure Category, Revenue Category, Organization, or No grouping. You may choose to define a new expenditure category (without any associated expenditure types) that is a holding place for the budget categories by Organization. You can disable the expenditure category after the upgrade.

Even if you don't use the cost breakdown code of Organization in your project budgets, you must still specify a valid expenditure category for the default expenditure category. In this case, you may select an existing expenditure category, such as Labor.

To specify these defaults, you must run the following scripts. The first one creates a temporary table to hold the default values, and the second prompts you for valid values. To run these scripts, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4ubu01.sql
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4ubu02.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   Understanding the Upgrade to the
> Enhanced Budget Model; Budgets and Project Summary Amounts
> *(Oracle Projects User's Guide)*

Step 13: Correct Data for Bug #492974 in Project Funding

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **4.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User must log off this application: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed, you are upgrading from Release 10.7, and you have not previously applied the fix for Bug #492974.

This bug relates to projects that are funded at both the project and top task level. You must change the funding on the project to fund at only one level. You *cannot* correct this data after you upgrade to or install Release 11.

Perform the following steps to find and correct this data:

- Check for projects that have funding at both the project and top task levels by running the script pa492974.sql. The information is written to a file called pa492974.lst.

  ```
  $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
  $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa492974.sql
  ```

- If the script lists exceptions, you must correct the data. If no exceptions are listed, the project funding data is correct and you can proceed to the next step.

- To correct the data, reverse of delete the funding at appropriate levels in the Agreements window and/or correct and baseline the budgets.

- Continue the process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are found.

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Projects. No one should be using the Oracle Applications system when you perform these steps.

Step 14: Release Expense Report Batches for Transfer to Oracle Payables

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Oracle Projects requires that all expenditure batches of expense reports are released for transfer to Oracle Payables before upgrading. Oracle Projects Release 11 does not support a user action to release expense report batches. All expenditure batches are automatically released when you cost the expense reports.

You can review and release working expenditure batches in the Update Expense Report Batches form. Release all working batches before upgrading.

Step 15: Process Expenditure Items and Cost Distribution Lines
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Oracle Projects now transfers supplier invoice adjustments to Oracle Payables instead of to Oracle General Ledger. In addition, expense report adjustments that net to zero are now attached to the original invoice in Oracle Payables. You need to ensure that all previously costed expenditure items are still costed, and that all cost distribution lines are either accepted or received in other Oracle Applications.

To perform this step, you run a script that lists all the previously costed expenditure items that are currently uncosted, and all the cost distribution lines that are not accepted or received in other Oracle Applications.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31ccst.sql <PA username> <PA password>
```

This information is written to a file called pa31ccst.lst. After you have corrected the exceptions by running the appropriate Distribute/Transfer/Tieback processes for the records listed in the file, repeat the process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

Step 16: Review and Update PA Period Names
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

In prior releases, PA periods were maintained within Oracle Projects. Beginning in Oracle Projects Release 10.7, PA periods are defined in Oracle General Ledger in the calendar associated with your GL set of books, and then copied to Oracle Projects.

During the upgrade, existing PA periods are copied to Oracle General Ledger as GL periods. However, the PERIOD_NAME in the PA_PERIODS_ALL table can have a size of 20 characters, whereas PERIOD_NAME in the GL_PERIODS table has a maximum size of 15 characters. Before copying PA periods to Oracle General Ledger, ensure that the PA period name is unique within the first 15 characters, unique within Oracle Projects, and unique within Oracle General Ledger. Before running the upgrade, you must run a script to create a temporary table PA_TMP_ PERIOD_FIX with the period names in PA_PERIODS_ALL in columns OLD_PA_ PERIOD_NAME and NEW_PA_PERIOD_NAME. To run this script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4pertb.sql
```

Next, you run a script that identifies which PA periods have non-unique names:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4cperu.sql
```

The list of PA periods with non-unique names is written to a file called pa4cperu.lst. You must correct period names that violate these conditions. After you have reviewed this file, use SQL*Plus to update the NEW_PA_PERIOD_NAME column in the table PA_TMP_PERIOD_FIX. You will be prompted for each OLD_PA_ PERIOD_NAME and the corresponding NEW_PA_PERIOD_NAME you want to change.

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4prupg.sql
```

Repeat the process of checking for exceptions and updating the exceptions listed in pa4cperu.lst until none are listed. If you have corrected any exceptions, then you must copy the new period names to the PA_PERIODS_ALL table and any other tables that reference PERIOD_NAME. To do this, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4fixpr.sql <commit-size>
```

Step 17: Save Custom Messages Used in Transaction Control Extensions
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.1 or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

You need to perform this step only if you have created custom messages to be used in your Transaction Control Extensions.

As noted in the transaction controls client extension documentation, Oracle Projects recognizes a message as custom only if it is owned by Oracle Projects and has a message name beginning with PATCX. If you have defined custom messages without using the PATCX notation, your custom messages will be removed during the upgrade.

To identify and save any custom messages beginning with PATCX, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @patcxpre.sql <AOL username> \
  <AOL password>
```

Oracle Projects restores these messages in an upgrade finishing step.

Step 18: Back Up Client Extensions Packages and Views
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.1 or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have created custom client extensions in Release 10. These include:

- Budget Calculation Extension

- Transaction Control Extension

- Labor Costing Extension

- Labor Transaction Extension

- Labor Billing Extension

- Billing Extension

- Project Security Extension

- Commitment View

- PTE Download Views

■ PTE Client Extensions

You will restore the custom client extension packages and views in Step 37, Reinstall Customized Client Extension Packages and Views in the After the Upgrade section of this chapter.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Projects, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Projects	
Steps	Performed by
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Projects.	
❏ **1.** Modify New Cost Distribution Lines Column as Not Null	Technical Specialist
❏ **2.** Modify New Event Columns as Not Null	Technical Specialist
❏ **3.** Verify PA Periods Upgrade	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **4.** Verify Budget Upgrade	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **5.** Define Budget Descriptive Flexfields	System Administrator
❏ **6.** Upgrade to Standard Report Submission	System Administrator
❏ **7.** Specify Selective Flex Segment for AutoAccounting	Technical Specialist
❏ **8.** Implement Oracle Personal Time and Expense (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **9.** Drop Audit Data for Fix for Bug #399684 (Recommended)	Technical Specialist
❏ **10.** Correct Data for Bug#400401 in Project Funding Amounts	Technical Specialist

Oracle Projects	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **11.** Correct Data for Bug #369975 in Event Billing	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **12.** Upgrade Labor Burdening for Cost Plus Processing	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **13.** Assign an Automatic Event Type for Cost-to-Cost Revenue Accrual and Billing	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **14.** Update the Revenue Category of Event Types	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **15.** Implement Event Revenue AutoAccounting using Task Level Parameters	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **16.** Correct Exceptions for Expenditure Item Job ID	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **17.** Update and Implement Resource Lists	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **18.** Update and Implement New Budget Implementation Data	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **19.** Update Budgets Categorized by Organization and Organization-Category	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **20.** Update and Implement Project Templates	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **21.** Migrate to Enhanced Project Status Summarization Model	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **22.** Implement Capital Projects Functionality (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **23.** Correct Event Upgrade from Oracle Project Accounting Version 2.0 or 3.0	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)

Oracle Projects	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **24.** Update Billing Extensions with Changes in Predefined Procedures (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist
❏ **25.** Review and Update Billing Cycle Names (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **26.** Review Organization Hierarchies and Uses of Organizations in Oracle Projects	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **27.** Update Project Status Values	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **28.** Convert Overtime Calculation Program to PL/SQL (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **29.** Populate Billing Title for Employee Assignments (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **30.** Implement Burden Cost Accounting (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **31.** Update New PTE Views and Packages (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator/Technical Specialist
❏ **32.** Review New PTE Multiple Organization Table (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator/Technical Specialist
❏ **33.** Correct Data for Bug #503183 in Budgets	Technical Specialist
❏ **34.** Correct Data for Bug #567490 in Summarization for Revenue Amounts	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **35.** Correct Data for Bug #502256 in Multi-Org Tables	Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **36.** Restore Custom Messages Used in Transaction Control Extensions	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)
❏ **37.** Reinstall Customized Client Extension Packages and Views	Technical Specialist

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Projects.

Step 1: Modify New Cost Distribution Lines Column as Not Null

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects added several new columns to the PA_COST_DISTRIBUTION _ LINES_ALL table. The new columns were populated during the upgrade. You must change these new columns to be not null. To perform this step, run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31ccnn.sql <PA username> <PA password>
```

If this script results in errors, contact your Oracle Support Services representative. Your data has not been properly updated during the upgrade.

Step 2: Modify New Event Columns as Not Null

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects added several new columns to the PA_EVENTS table. The new columns were populated during the upgrade. You must change these new columns to be not null. To perform this step, run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa31evnn.sql <PA username> <PA password>
```

If this script results in errors, contact your Oracle Support Services representative. Your data has not been properly updated during the upgrade

Step 3: Verify PA Period Upgrade

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

You can now enter PA periods as periods with a specified period type in the GL calendar associated with your set of books. You then copy the PA periods when you implement Oracle Projects.

To support this feature, Oracle Projects has upgraded your existing PA periods as GL periods using the period type of PA Period. The number of periods for this period type is set to 366. The period names in GL are defined as <PA Period Name> and are truncated to a length of 15 characters.

Oracle Projects maps PA Periods to GL periods for project summarization. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects mapped each PA period to the GL period that contains the PA period end date. You must verify that each PA period has a corresponding GL period. The primary reason why a PA period may not have a corresponding GL period is that the GL period for that PA end date is not defined.

To check for exception PA periods without GL periods, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PA_TOP/admin/sql pa4cgupp.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa4cgupp.lst. You must define GL periods for the exception PA periods and then run the script that updates the PA periods. Repeat this process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

To update the PA periods, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ugucp.sql <commit-size>
```

Step 4: Verify Budget Upgrade
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects upgraded your project budgets to the enhanced budget model. You must verify that all project budgets were successfully upgraded. To list the projects that were not successfully upgraded, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PA_TOP/admin/sql pa4ubu07.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa4ub07.lst. You need to resolve the issues and then rerun the budget upgrade to process these projects. Continue the process of checking for and correcting exceptions until none are listed.

To rerun the budget upgrade, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ubu04.sql
```

Step 5: Define Budget Descriptive Flexfields
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have implemented descriptive flexfield segments on the Subbudgets table.

During the budget upgrade, Oracle Projects copies the descriptive flexfield attribute values as follows:

- If the descriptive flexfield is entered at the project level, then the values are copied to the descriptive flexfield segments for the budget version (Budget Versions Descriptive Flexfield).

- If the descriptive flexfield is entered at the task level, then the values are copied to a budget line using the Unclassified resource. If the budget line does not exist for the task (because the task has all zero budget amounts), then a new budget line with zero amounts is created with the CMT Comment Created to Show DescFlex Data (Budget Lines Descriptive Flexfield).

To see this descriptive flexfield data in the Budgets window, you need to set up your descriptive flexfield segments for the Budget Versions Descriptive Flexfield and/or the Budget Lines Descriptive Flexfield. Be sure to define your descriptive flexfield segments using the same ATTRIBUTE columns and value sets that you used in the Subbudgets Descriptive Flexfield. You can do this by using the Descriptive Flexfield window in the System Administrator responsibility.

After you complete the setup and validation of the Budget Line Descriptive Flexfield, you can delete the Subbudget Descriptive Flexfield. To do this, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4udf01.sql
```

Step 6: Upgrade to Standard Report Submission
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **System Administrator and Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects uses Standard Report Submission (SRS) to run all reports and processes — it no longer supports its own Run Reports and Programs form and tables. You must define request groups and assign them to responsibilities, if you have not already done so in the upgrade preparation.

You must also upgrade your custom reports and processes to use the SRS functions. To do this, you must:

- Define value sets for any custom list of values for your reports. Review the value sets that Oracle Projects has defined for its programs. These predefined value sets begin with PA_SRS.

- Update your concurrent programs as SRS programs and add parameters. You do this by updating Standard Submission to Yes and adding the parameters in the Define Concurrent Programs window.

- Define request sets (optional)

- Define request groups

- Assign request groups to responsibilities

After you have completed the transition, you can drop the PA_PROGRAMS and PA_PROGRAM_PARAMETERS tables.

> **Additional Information:** Submitting Requests *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11);* Managing Concurrent Programs and Reports, Organizing Programs into Request Groups, and Request Security Groups *(Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide)*

Step 7: Specify Selective Flex Segment for AutoAccounting
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

As of Version 4.1, Oracle Projects uses the PA: Selective Flexfield Segment for AutoAccounting profile option when validating account combinations. You should set this profile option to improve the performance of AutoAccounting validation. Set this profile option at the application level to the segment number that is the

most selective value, typically the account segment. Navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility.

Step 8: Implement Oracle Personal Time and Expense (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Online expenditure entry, in which employees enter their own timecards and expense reports, is now performed using Oracle Personal Time and Expense. If you used online expenditure entry in previous versions of Oracle Project Accounting, you must now implement Oracle Personal Time and Expense.

> **Additional Information:**   Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide

Step 9: Drop Audit Data for Fix for Bug #399684 (Recommended)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects Version 4 (and later) automatically fixes the data problem that resulted from bug #399684. In this bug, projects were originally set up with no burden schedule, and were later changed to burdened. However, no burden schedule was entered. Supplier invoices were interfaced to Project Accounting, but could not be burdened. In Version 4 (and later), the supplier invoice items cannot be interfaced to a burdened project that has no related burden schedule.

AutoInstall deletes the expenditure items and cost distribution lines for such supplier invoices and creates a record in several audit tables to record the rows that have been deleted. We recommend that you review the audit tables. After you complete the review, you can drop the tables by running the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4dviex.sql <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

Step 10: Correct Data for Bug #400401 in Project Funding Amounts
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed, and you have not applied the fix for Bug #400401 with Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.1. If you have already applied the fix, then you have completed this step and can proceed to the next.

This bug relates to the accrued revenue and billed amounts in the summary project funding records that do not correctly reflect the sum of the draft revenue items and the sum of the draft invoice items.

To correct this data, run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4uuspf.sql <commit-size>
```

Step 11: Correct Data for Bug #369975 in Event Billing
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed, and you have not applied the fix for Bug #369975 with Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.1. If you have already applied the fix, then you have already completed this step and can proceed to the next.

This bug relates to write-on and manual events in which both revenue and bill amounts are incorrectly being billed multiple times.

To find and correct this data, you must do the following:

- Run a script (pa4civev.sql) to list events that have been billed multiple times. The information is written to a file called pa4civev.lst.

    ```
    $ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
    $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4civev.sql
    ```

    If this script lists events, then you must correct the data. If no events are listed, then the event billing data is correct and you may proceed to the next upgrade step.

- Cancel all invoices on which the event is billed, except the invoice that appears first on the pa4civev.lst listing for each event. Wait for the cancellation process to complete.

- Run a script (pa4uivev.sql) to correct the data.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4uivev.sql <commit-size>
```

- Rerun pa4ciev.sql to check for events that are billed on multiple invoices.

Repeat this process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

Step 12: Upgrade Labor Burdening for Cost Plus Processing
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

If you use labor burdening in Oracle Projects, you must complete all the steps listed in this section. We recommend that you read the following paragraphs before you complete these steps, as you can implement cost plus processing beyond your current implementation of labor burdening in Oracle Projects during this upgrade step.

> **Additional Information:** Cost Plus Processing *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

❶ **Define Cost Bases**

To minimally upgrade your existing burden implementation to the functionality of labor burdening supported in Version 3.0, you must define one cost base for Labor.

❷ **Define Burden Cost Codes**

To minimally upgrade your existing burden implementation, you must define the same burden cost codes that you have defined in Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0. When defining your burden cost codes, select the cost base type of Burden Cost. You can use the output report of the IMP: Burden Cost Codes Listing that you ran during the upgrade preparation steps to see which multipliers existed in your Version 3.0 implementation.

❸ **Define Burden Structure**

To minimally upgrade your existing burden implementation, you must define one additive burden structure that includes the labor cost base that you just defined. You specify the burden cost codes that are applied to your labor cost base. You also select all your straight time expenditure types when specifying the types of costs for your labor cost base.

If you defined burden cost multipliers for projects and tasks in Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0 and you want to perform a minimal upgrade for your burden implementation, you must specify that this structure is allowed for use in a burden schedule override.

❹ **Define Burden Schedule**

To minimally upgrade your existing burden implementation, you must define one firm schedule using the structure that you just defined. When you define revisions, be sure that you define revision start and end dates that match the date ranges of your unique combination of rates.

For each revision, record the appropriate burden cost multipliers that you have recorded in Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0. You can use the IMP: Burden Cost Multipliers Listing that you ran during the upgrade preparation to see which multipliers existed in your Version 3.0 implementation.

When you complete the entry and verification of your rates, you must compile the new rates.

❺ **Assign Burden Schedule to Project Types**

You must assign a costing burden schedule to all burdened project types. If you have entered burden cost multiplier overrides for projects and tasks, you must check the Allow Schedule Override check box.

❻ **Update Costing Schedule for Projects and Tasks**

You must update all projects and their tasks that are burdened with a costing schedule. You do this by running the following script, which updates the project and task costing schedule with the costing schedule you assigned to the appropriate project type:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31upr1.pls <APPS username> \
  <APPS password> <commit-size>
```

If you want to override the costing schedule defaulted from the project type for particular projects and tasks, you can do this using the Projects window after you have completed these upgrade finishing steps.

❼ Implement AutoAccounting for Total Burdened Costs (Conditionally Required)

You can choose not to create total burdened cost distribution lines, even if you are burdening cost. If you do not want to create these distribution lines, omit this substep.

If you want to create total burdened cost distribution lines for all transactions on burdened projects, you must assign rules to these two new AutoAccounting functions:

■   Total Burdened Cost Debit

■   Total Burdened Cost Credit

You must assign rules for these AutoAccounting functions before you can run the PRC: Distribute Total Burdened Cost process.

You can use the output report of the IMP: AutoAccounting Segment Rule Pairings Listing that you ran during the upgrade preparation steps to see which rules you used for total burdened cost accounting in your Version 3.0 implementation.

❽ Upgrade Project/Task Burden Cost Multiplier Overrides

If you defined burden cost multiplier overrides for projects and tasks in Oracle Project Accounting, you must perform this step to upgrade the existing multipliers to burden schedule overrides for projects and tasks. AutoInstall will find all existing burden cost multipliers associated with projects or tasks using a burden cost code classified by a type of Labor and will create a costing burden schedule override for the project or task. It will create revisions for the schedule based on the start and end dates for each multiplier.

You must first run a script that creates a temporary table used to map the old burden cost codes to the new ones. This script also prompts you to enter a burden structure, and ensures that the structure allows overrides and is additive. You created this previously in substep 12.3.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31ubc1.sql
```

Next, you need to establish the mapping of old burden cost codes to new ones. The following script prompts you to enter the old burden cost code name and then the new one that you are mapping to. When you have entered all the mappings, press [Ctrl-C] to exit. The script validates that the new burden cost codes you entered map to defined burden cost codes associated with the specified burden structure.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31ubc2.sql
```

Now you must run a script to create the appropriate burden schedule overrides for projects/tasks from the burden cost multiplier overrides. If the script cannot create a schedule due to an exception, it omits the project and moves on to the next one. You may encounter the following exceptions:

- You have not mapped all the old burden cost codes used for the project or task using the pa31ubc2.sql script.

- You have already defined a costing burden schedule override for the project or task through the Enter Projects window or the Enter Tasks window.

- You have defined the project type of the project to prevent an override of the costing schedule.

To run the script that creates the schedule overrides, type the following commands:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31ubc3.sql <commit-size>
```

This information is written to a file called pa31ubc3.lst. Review the exception information and make the appropriate changes. Rerun the script until none are listed. When no errors are listed, all schedule overrides have been successfully created.

The final step is to drop the temporary objects created for this step, as they are no longer necessary. To drop the temporary objects, run the following script:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>  @pa31ubc4.sql
```

Step 13: Assign an Automatic Event Type for Cost-to-Cost Revenue Accrual and Billing
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

You need to perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

Oracle Projects processes COST distribution rules using billing extensions to automatically create events for cost-to-cost revenue and invoice amounts. If your company uses any COST distribution rule for projects, you need to update the predefined billing extensions with an event type classified as Automatic. The

predefined billing extensions are named Cost-to-Cost Invoice and Cost-to-Cost Revenue.

If you are upgrading from Version 3.0:

To complete this step, first define a new event type with a classification of Automatic that you want to use for cost-to-cost revenue and invoice amounts. You may wish to use two event types, one for revenue and one for invoice.

Next, assign the event type to the Default Event Type field in the Billing Extensions window for the two predefined billing extensions.

If you are upgrading from Version 3.1:

You must re-enter the default event type before you can successfully accrue revenue and invoicing using the cost-to-cost revenue accrual method. Use the Billing Extensions window to re-enter the default event type for the two predefined billing extensions.

> **Additional Information:** Billing Extensions and Assigning Event Types for Cost-to-Cost Revenue *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 14: Update the Revenue Category of Event Types

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

In Oracle Projects, you need to assign a revenue category to events. You need to ensure that all existing event types have a revenue category, and then update all existing revenue items created from an event with the revenue category of the event.

To complete this step, assign a revenue category to all existing event types using the Event Types window. Then run the script that updates the revenue category and task ID for all existing revenue items created from events.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31uev1.pls <APPS username> \
  <APPS password> <commit-size>
```

Step 15: Implement Event Revenue AutoAccounting Using Task Level Parameters
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects now supports the task level parameters for the Event Revenue AutoAccounting function that were removed with Version 3.1. You can set up your event revenue AutoAccounting rules to use the following task level parameters:

■   Task Organization

■   Task Organization ID

■   Task Service Type

■   Task Number

■   Task ID

■   Top Task Number

■   Top Task ID

If Oracle Projects is processing a project level event, and you are using task level parameters for which these values are blank for project level events, you will encounter a rejection reason during AutoAccounting validation and the event will not be processed.

Step 16: Correct Exceptions for Expenditure Item Job ID
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects requires that every expenditure item incurred by an employee have a valid job ID associated with it. Oracle Projects upgraded expenditure items incurred by an employee with the job ID based on the active employee assignment as of the expenditure item date. However, there may be expenditure items that do not have a valid job ID, if the employee does not have an active employee assignment for the expenditure item date or the employee assignment does not have a specified job.

You must review any exception expenditure items that do not have a valid job ID and then correct the information.

To list the exceptions, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PA_TOP/admin/sql pa4uex03.sql
```

This information is written to a file called pa4uex03.lst. You must correct the employee assignments for these exceptions by updating the employee assignments in the Employee window. Be sure that the employee has an active employee assignment for the expenditure item date with a job associated with it.

Once you have corrected the employee assignments, you can run a script to update the expenditure items with a valid job ID, by typing the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4uex02.sql <commit-size> 'POST'
```

Repeat the process of listing exceptions, correcting the employee assignments, and updating the expenditure items, until no exceptions are listed. After each attempt to fix the data, truncate the table PA_V4UPG_EXPEND_BAD_JOBS before you run pa4uex02.sql to list the exceptions.

Once you have corrected all exceptions, you can drop the table that tracks the exception expenditure items, by typing the following commands.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4uex04.sql <PA Username>\
  <PA Password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

> **Note:** You pass four parameters to the sql script: the PA username, PA password, APPS username, and APPS password.

Step 17: Update and Implement Resource Lists
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

In Oracle Projects Version 4 (and later), all projects must have a resource list assignment for project status summarization. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects created a default resource list of expenditure types grouped by expenditure category and assigned this resource list as the default for each project type and to

every project template and project. Oracle Projects also created additional resource lists for use in the budget upgrade. The resource lists may include:

Table 19–7   Resource Lists

Resource List	Description
EXPCAT_TYPE	Expenditure Types grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_JOB_TYPE	Expenditure Types and Jobs grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_ORG	Organizations grouped by Expenditure Category
ORG_EXPCAT	Expenditure Categories grouped by Organization
EXPCAT_TYPE_ORG	Expenditure Types and Organizations grouped by Expenditure Category
EXPCAT_ORG_TYPE_JOB	Expenditure Types, Organizations, and Jobs grouped by Expenditure Category
REV_CATEG	Expenditure Types grouped by Revenue Category

You can query the records that were created during the upgrade and update the names that were used to be more descriptive and user-friendly. You can disable the lists that you no longer want to use.

You may further implement resource lists to take advantage of the enhanced project status and budgeting functionality. You can:

- define new resource lists

- change the default resource list for each project type

- assign additional resource lists to project templates

- assign additional resource lists to projects

> **Additional Information:**   Defining Resource Lists and Assigning Resource Lists to Projects *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 18: Update and Implement New Budget Implementation Data
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Updating Budget Data Defined During the Upgrade

Oracle Projects created new budget implementation data when it upgraded your project budgets to the enhanced budget model. This data includes:

- Budget Types
- Budget Entry Methods
- Resource Lists

You can query the records that were created and update the names that were used to be more descriptive and user-friendly.

> **Additional Information:**   Understanding the Upgrade to the Enhanced Budget Model in this chapter.

Updating Budget Control Fields for Project Types

Oracle Projects controls how you budget and fund projects based on budget control attributes for each project type.

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects sets the budget control fields as follows:

Allow Cost Budget	Set to Yes if a non-zero budget for any project of the project type exists. If none exists, set to No.
Allow Revenue Budget	Set to Yes for all contract project types. For indirect and capital, set to Yes if a non-zero revenue amount budget for any project of the project type exists. If none exists, set to No.
Resource Lists	Set to the resource list of expenditure types grouped by expenditure category for cost budgets, and of revenue categories for revenue budgets.
Budget Entry Method	Set to the budget entry method for categorized budget entry for top and lowest tasks.

You can update those values in the Project Types window in the Budget Control region to meet your business needs.

Updating Funding Control Field in Project Types

Oracle Projects supports the ability to control whether you allow funding of a project at the project level, top task level, or both project and top task levels. This value is set to Both during the upgrade. You can update this value in the Project Types window in the Billing Info region.

Defining New Budget Implementation Data

You may also define additional data to take advantage of the new features of budgeting.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Projects Implementation Checklist Budgets *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 19: Update Budgets Categorized by Organization and Organization-Category

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You need to perform this step only if, with Release 11, you have upgraded budgets that were categorized using the Organization or Organization-Category cost breakdown code in Oracle Project Accounting.

During AutoInstall, the budgets that were categorized this way were upgraded to use a resource list that was grouped by Expenditure Category with resources of Organizations (EXPCAT_ORG). Beginning with Release 10.7 Production 16, Oracle Projects has supported a resource list grouped by Organization with resources of Expenditure Category (ORG_EXPCAT).

If you want to change the resource lists for these budgets, follow these steps:

❶ **Create the Database Packages**

Run the following script to create the database packages that will be called by the main script.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PAXBUUFS.pls
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PAXBUUFB.pls
```

❷ **Mark the Budgets to be Reassigned**

Run the following Mark Budgets script to mark the budgets for which the resource list will be reassigned. The script will generate a report listing the budgets marked for processing. If no budgets are listed in the report, no budgets will be affected by the reassign process and you are finished with this upgrade step.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ubu09.sql
```

❸ Reassign the Resource Lists

If any budgets were listed, run the following Reassign script to reassign the resource lists:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ubu10.sql
```

The Reassign script will generate a log. If there are any exceptions listed in the log, make the indicated changes and run the Reassign script again.

❹ Repeat Mark Budgets and Reassign Steps

Continue marking budgets and reassigning resource lists until the Reassign script log contains no rejected or unprocessed budgets.

When the Mark Budgets script is run after the Reassign script, the generated list shows budgets rejected by the Reassign script as well as unprocessed budgets. For the rejected budgets, it lists the reason for rejection. Correct the data in the rejected budgets before you reassign the resource list.

❺ Generate a List of Updated Budgets

After the Mark Budgets step generates a clean report, run the following script, which generates a list of the updated budgets. You will need to run the PRC: Refresh Project Summary Amounts process for each of the budgets on this list.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ubu11.sql
```

❻ Delete Obsolete Budget Objects

After you are sure that all project budgets are upgraded, you can drop the temporary table and view used in the budget upgrade by typing these commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4ubu05.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

You may also drop the old budget tables used in prior versions of Oracle Projects. Dropping the old budget tables is recommended, but not required. You may want to export the tables before you drop them so that you have a backup. To drop the old budget tables, type these commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <PA username>/<PA password> @pa4ubu06.sql <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

Step 20: Update and Implement Project Templates
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects requires every project to be associated with a project template to see project options and Quick Entry fields. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects automatically created one template for each project type and associated the appropriate template with each project.

Each project template is defined with:

- Number and name of T0000<Project Type>

- A default task of Task 1

- Quick Entry fields of Project Number and Project Name

- All project options appropriate for that project type class

- A resource list assignment to a resource list of expenditure types grouped by expenditure category

You can update these project templates by choosing to see only Project Templates in the Project Templates window. You may choose to:

- update the template number and name

- add tasks

- change the Quick Entry fields

- change the selected project options

- define additional data for various project options

   Additional Information: Project Templates *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Performing an advanced upgrade

If you want to change the template that the existing projects are associated with in order to take advantage of more features of templates, you can update the CREATED_FROM_PROJECT_ID column in the PA_PROJECTS_ALL table with a valid template (any valid template in PA_PROJECTS_ALL identified by the TEMPLATE_FLAG = 'Y' and defined with the same PROJECT_TYPE as the project being updated).

Step 21: Migrate to Enhanced Project Status Summarization Model
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Oracle Projects Version 4 (and later) supports a new summarization model based on new tables that replace the project accumulation and employee accumulation tables in previous versions of Oracle Project Accounting.

The GUI Project Status Inquiry window is based on this new summarization model. To use Project Status Inquiry, you must summarize budgets, actuals, and commitments for your existing projects using the new model.

To use this model, you must:

- Define resource lists and assign them to projects (optional). You may choose to assign additional resource lists.

   Additional Information: Update and Implement Resource Lists, Defining Resource Lists and Assigning Resource Lists to Projects *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

- Set the Current Reporting Period (required).

   Additional Information: Setting the PA Reporting Period *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Set the Summarization Period Type in the Implementation Options window (conditionally required). The Summarization Period Type is set to PA period during the upgrade. If you want to summarize by GL period, you must change the Summarization Period Type to GL period.

> **Additional Information:** Summarization Period Type *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Configure Commitment Reporting (conditionally required). You do this only if you want to change the definition of commitments from the definition that Oracle Projects delivers.

> **Additional Information:** Integrating Commitments from External Systems *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Summarize budgets, actuals, and commitments for your projects (required). You must run the appropriate Project Summarization process for your needs: Refresh Project Summary Amounts, Refresh Transaction Summary Amounts, and∕or Update Project Summary Amounts.

> **Additional Information:** Creating Project Summary Amounts After Conversion *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Convert custom reports and processes to the new summarization model (required). You can transition to the new summarization model over a period of time, by running both the old accumulation and the new summarization at the same time. See the Running Both Old Accumulation and New Summarization in Parallel section in this chapter for more information on converting custom reports and processes to use the new summarization model.

> **Additional Information:** Custom Reporting Using Project Summary Amounts *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Add Update Project Summary Amounts to your production cycle (required). Oracle Projects does not summarize actuals when interfacing to Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Payables. You can now summarize budgets, actuals, and commitments after baselining budgets, distributing costs, and releasing revenue, independently of interfacing to the other applications.

■ Configure Project Status Inquiry Display Columns (conditionally required). If you need to display information that is not displayed in the default

configuration of Project Status Inquiry, you can configure the Project Status Inquiry display columns.

> **Additional Information:** Project Status Inquiry Setup *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

■ Train users on how to use the new Project Status Inquiry window and the new Update Project Summary Amounts process for a single project (required).

> **Additional Information:** Project Status Tracking and Updating Project Summary Amounts *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Running Both Old Accumulation and New Summarization In Parallel

You can choose to run the old accumulation and the new summarization as a transition until you have converted all of your custom reports and processes to use the new summarization model. In order to run both the old accumulation and the new summarization, you must set the application level profile option of PA: Dual Accumulation Mode to Yes.

After you have completed the transition to the new summarization model and when you are ready to disable the old accumulation model, you must:

■ Set the application level profile option of PA: Dual Accumulation Mode to No

■ Optionally, drop the old accumulation tables and views, which include:
PA_PROJECT_EXP_ITEM_ACCUM
PA_PROJECT_EVENT_ACCUM
PA_EMPLOYEE_ACCUM_ALL
PA_EMPLOYEE_ACCUM (view in APPS account)
PA_EMPLOYEE_ORG_ACCUM_ALL
PA_EMPLOYEE_ORG_ACCUM (view in APPS account)

Upgrading Old Accumulation Tables

Perform these steps only if you are upgrading from Version 3.0 and you plan to run the old accumulation and the new summarization in parallel for a period of time. These steps will upgrade the old accumulation tables based on changes introduced with Version 3.0 and 3.1.

❶ **Run Event Accumulation**

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

After you update all event types with a revenue category in the After the Upgrade step 14, you need to update the event information held in the event accumulator table. To perform this step, run the script below.

This script accumulates event revenue. The last parameter, Y, controls the accumulation logic so the program runs for events only.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ $PA_TOP/bin/PAARPA <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <Start_project> \ <End_
project> <Start_pa_period> <End_pa_period> <Start_gl_period> \ <End_gl_period> Y
Y
```

Example:

To run this script without specifying any dates, type the following syntax:

```
$ PAARPA <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <start project> <end project> "" \
"" "" "" Y Y
```

> **Note:** You must enter a start project number and an end project number. The project number is not the number displayed to the user, but the internally generated ID. To extract this ID when the external project number is known, you can use this syntax: SELECT PROJECT_ID FROM PA_PROJECTS_ALL WHERE SEGMENT1= '<project number>'.

❷ **Modify New Event Accumulation Columns as Not Null**

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

After you have run event accumulation, you must change the new columns to be not null. To perform this step, run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa31eann.sql <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

If this script results in errors, contact your Oracle technical support representative. Your data has not properly been updated by the event accumulation logic.

Step 22: Implement Capital Projects Functionality (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects now supports capital projects and the integration of capitalized costs to Oracle Assets. Implement this functionality if you want to use Oracle Projects to track capital projects.

Oracle Projects supports your capital projects needs, including:

- Defining new project types (required)

- Changing AutoAccounting and Account Generator setup for new capital projects (optional)

- Defining projects using new capital project types

    Additional Information: Capital Projects *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Upgrading Direct Projects under Oracle Project Costing
Oracle Projects does not upgrade direct project types under Project Costing to be capital project types because it is difficult to know whether costs on projects using these capital project types are capitalized or not. Instead, these direct project types are upgraded to indirect project types. You can continue interfacing capitalized costs from these projects to Oracle Assets as you have defined your business processes. However, you will need to change your AutoAccounting and Workflow setup to use the indirect function transactions instead of the direct function transactions for the capital projects.

You may choose to close these existing projects and define new one using the new capital project types. You may transfer or enter project costs to these new projects. You must determine how you want to identify which costs have already been capitalized on the project. Or you may choose to begin to use the capital project functionality supported in Oracle Projects as you define new capital projects.

Step 23: Correct Event Upgrade from Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 (and you have upgraded events)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

The upgrade from Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.0 did not accurately update expenditure items that were marked FIFO by events assigned to tasks that are both the top and the lowest tasks.

To fix these events, run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa4lupei.sql
```

Step 24: Update Billing Extensions with Changes in Predefined Procedures (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.1 or 4.1 (and if you have installed Oracle Project Billing and use any predefined public procedures in your billing extensions)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Oracle Projects provides public procedures to be used in your billing extensions. The names of these procedures have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, you must modify the extensions to use the new procedure names. The following table lists the old names and the new names of the predefined public procedures.

Table 19–8   Predefined Public Procedure Names

Old Name: package.procedure	New Name: package.procedure
pb_public.insert_event	pa_billing_pub.insert_event
pb_public.insert_message	pa_billing_pub.insert_message
pb_public.get_budget_amount	pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount

> **Additional Information:** Billing Extensions *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

In addition, new parameters have been added to the procedures. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, then you must add these new parameters to the billing extensions. The following table lists the new parameters that have been added to the public procedures.

Table 19–9   New Parameters in Predefined Public Procedures

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.insert_event	x_audit_amount(1-10)
	x_audit_cost_budget_type_code
	x_audit_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status
pa_billing_pub.insert_message	x_error_message
	x_status
pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount	p_cost_budget_type_code
	p_rev_budget_type_code
	x_cost_budget_type_code
	x_rev_budget_type_code
	x_error_message
	x_status

> **Additional Information:**   Billing Extensions *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 25: Review and Update Billing Cycle Names (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing)**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

During the upgrade, your project billing cycle data was upgraded to the enhanced billing cycle model. Billing cycles were created, based on your existing projects, as follows:

Table 19–10   Billing Cycles Upgrade

Billing Cycle Field	Value
Name	Billing Cycle Days: *n*
	(n = the value of Bill Cycle Days)
Type	Bill Cycle Days
Bill Cycle Days	The value of Billing Cycle for a project

During the upgrade, each project was associated with the new billing cycle name. Review all the names of the billing cycle codes in the Billing Cycles window, and change them if you want to. To navigate to the Billing Cycles window, choose Setup > Billing > Billing Cycle.

> **Additional Information:**   Billing Cycles *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 26: Review Organization Hierarchies and Uses of Organizations

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects updated your organizations to the new organization reference model used by Oracle Projects. You may want to change some of the Project/Task/Invoice Organizations that resulted from the update process. In Release 10.7 (and earlier), you could control which organizations were used as Project Task Owning/Invoice Organizations by Operating Units. That is, the same organization could be a Project /Task Owning/Invoice Organization in one operating unit but not in a different one. This could happen if you had specified different Project Organization Types for the operating units in the PA implementations option.

In Release 11, Project Organization type is not used to identify the Project/Task owning/Invoice Organization. Instead, the organization classifications Project/Task Owning Organization and Invoice Organization specified at the organization level are used to identify Project/Task Owning and Invoice Organizations (organizations

are shared among operating units in a business group). Therefore, after the upgrade, you might have organizations in some operating units that you did not intend to use as Project/Task Owning/Invoice organizations. Run the following script to determine the organizations that were upgraded under this condition:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

The list of organizations for each operating unit that were set as project or invoice organizations is written to a file called paxupor2.lst. Review this file.

If any exceptions are listed, you must build a new organization hierarchy that does not contain these organizations. Assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning Organization Hierarchy in the PA implementation options.

> **Additional Information:**   Organizations in Oracle Projects (*Oracle Projects User's Guide Release 11*)

Step 27: Update Project Status Values
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

In Release 11, Oracle Projects introduces several new fields for project statuses in the Project Statuses window. One of the new fields is System Status.

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects populated each of your user-defined project statuses with the System Status of Upgraded. You must update each of these project statuses with the appropriate System Status.

To update the System Status for your user-defined project statuses, complete the following steps:

- In the Project Statuses window, (Setup > Projects > Statuses), query all the records with a System Status of Upgraded.

- For each of the project statuses displayed, select the appropriate System Status from the list of values. You can also change the status controls (actions allowed for each project status), which were set to default values during the upgrade.

- Save your changes.

■ Run the query again and ensure that there are no records with a System Status of Upgraded.

> **Additional Information:** Project Statuses *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 28: Convert Overtime Calculation Program to PL/SQL (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1 (and you have implemented Oracle Projects Overtime Calculation)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

The Oracle Projects Overtime Calculation program has been rewritten in PL/SQL for Release 11. The new PL/SQL procedure is called from an Oracle*Reports report, which, in turn, is called by the PRC: Distribute Labor Costs process. The new files, which are in the admin/sql directory, are PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls. You must rewrite your existing SQL*Reports Overtime Calculation programs in these new files.

> **Additional Information:** Tracking Overtime and Premium Labor Costs and Overtime Calculation Extension *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 29: Populate Billing Title for Employee Assignments (Conditionally Required)

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1 (and you have installed Oracle Project Billing and have implemented employee billing titles for use in your invoice formats)**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Starting with Release 11, Oracle Projects now looks for an employee billing title in the TITLE column of the PER_ASSIGNMENTS_F table. In earlier versions of Oracle Projects, this value was stored in the descriptive flexfield column (ASS_ ATTRIBUTE1) of the same table.

You must populate the billing title on the employee assignments in the new column. A sample script has been provided that populates the TITLE column with the contents of the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column, and sets the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column to null. If the flexfield has been set up, this script must be modified appropriately. To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u506.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Employees and Employee Assignments *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 30: Implement Burden Cost Accounting (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects) (for Advanced Users Only)**

User's Guide needed: **Yes**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you wish to enable the new Burden Cost Accounting feature for some or all of your existing upgraded projects.

> **Note:** Review the essay on Burdening (Cost Plus Processing) in the *Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11* before attempting to perform this step.

During the upgrade, Oracle Projects upgrades all project types, and hence all existing projects, with the option that will allow you to continue using the burdening method that was available in prior Oracle Projects releases. This is done by selecting the Record Burden Amounts with Raw Cost option for project types that are burdened.

You may wish to enable the new Burden Cost Accounting feature for some or all of your existing upgraded projects. The only option available with upgraded projects is to now account for Burden Cost Components on separate indirect projects. To do this, select the Account for Burden Costs option and specify a project and task to which these burden costs will be charged. You do this in the Project Types Setup window.

This action enables burden cost accounting for all new transactions. Existing transactions are upgraded such that they are not picked up by the new programs

that account for burden costs. If you wish to account for burden costs for existing upgraded transactions, you must run the following script and pass it the appropriate project type as a parameter:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa11u215.sql
```

> **Additional Information:** Accounting for Individual Burden Cost Components *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 31: Update New PTE Views and Packages (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1 (and you intend to use Oracle Personal Time and Expense with Oracle Projects Release 11)**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Technical Specialist**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects or Oracle Personal Time and Expense (PTE)**

In Release 11, the Oracle Personal Time and Expense (PTE) download view was renamed from PTE_DL_WBS_V to PA_PTE_DL_WBS_V. Other PTE views were also changed. To set up the PTE user accounts properly, you must first run the following script:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @papteusr.sql
```

Then, if you are upgrading from Release 10.4 or 10.5, type the following additional command:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @papteusr.sql <SYSTEM username>\
  <SYSTEM password> <PA username> <PA password> <FND username> <FND password>
```

Or, if you are upgrading from Release 10.6 or 10.7, type the following additional command:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @papteusr.sql <SYSTEM username>\
  <SYSTEM password> <APPS username> <APPS password> <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

In addition, if you made any customizations to the old view, you must now apply the same customizations to the new PA_PTE_DL_WBS_V view.

Step 32: Review New PTE Multiple Organization Table (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1 (and if you intend to use Oracle Personal Time and Expense with Oracle Projects (Release 11) in a multiple organization implementation)**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Technical Specialist**

User's Guide needed: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects or Oracle Personal Time and Expense (PTE)**

You have in place a process to maintain the PA_PTE_MULTI_ORG_EMP_MAP table. This table is now obsolete and has been replaced with the PA_PTE_MORG_ EMP_TAB table. Review and update the new table using the PTE Multi-Org Control Window in Oracle Projects.

> **Additional Information:**   Using PTE in a Multiple Organization Environment *(Oracle Projects User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 33: Correct Data for Bug #503183 in Budgets
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0, 3.1, or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have not previously applied the fix for Bug #503183 with Oracle Project Accounting Version 3.1 or Oracle Projects Version 4.1. If you have previously applied the fix, you can proceed to the next step.

In non-burdened projects, budgeted burdened cost should equal budgeted raw cost. Prior to Release 11, if budgeting burdened cost was not entered, the amount defaulted to zero rather than to the budgeted raw cost.

To find and correct this data, you must do the following:

- Run a script (pa411bu5.sql) to list budgets where the raw cost was entered and burdened cost amounts are null or zero. The information is written to a file called pa411bu5.lst. This file includes the project ID of each project it lists.

   ```
   $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
   $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PA_TOP/admin/sql pa411bu5.sql
   ```

   If this script lists any budgets, then you must correct the data. If no budgets are listed, then the budget data is correct and you may proceed to the next upgrade step.

- Run a script (pa411bu6.sql) to correct the data. This script updates the budgets that contain incorrect null or zero burdened costs.

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
```

Then, if you are upgrading from Release 10.4 or 10.5, type the following additional command:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa411bu6.sql <SYSTEM username> \
  <SYSTEM password> <PA username> <PA password> <FND username> \
  <FND password>
```

Or, if you are upgrading from Release 10.6 or 10.7, type the following additional command:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa411bu6.sql <SYSTEM username> \
  <SYSTEM password> <APPS username> <APPS password> <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

This script prompts you to enter the range of project IDs to fix. You can use the information in the pa411bu5.lst file to determine the range(s) of projects. The script also prompts you to indicate if you want to update budgets where the burdened cost is zero. If your response is Yes, budgets with burdened cost equal to null or zero will be updated. If your response is No, only budgets with burdened cost equal to null will be updated.

- Rerun pa411bu5.sql to check for budgets where the raw cost was entered and burdened cost amounts are null or zero.

- Repeat the process of checking for and updating exceptions until none are listed.

- Run the Update Project summary Amounts process for all projects where the budgets were fixed by pa411bu6.sql.

Step 34: Correct Data for Bug #567490 in Summarization for Revenue Amounts
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **4.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

User's Guide needed: **No**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

You need to perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Bill installed, you are upgrading from Release 10.7 Production 16.1, and you have not previously applied

the fix for bug 567490. This bug is related to draft revenues that were summarized and then unreleased.

Complete the following steps to find and correct this data:

- Run a script (pa567490.sql) that checks for incorrect summarized revenue amounts. This script writes information to a file called pa567490.lst.

  ```
  $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
  $ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PA_TOP/admin/sql pa567490.sql
  ```

- If the file contains exceptions, you must correct the data. If no exceptions are found, then the summarized data is correct and you can proceed to the next upgrade step.

- To correct the data, you must refresh the summary amounts for the exception projects listed in pa567490.sql.

If, before the upgrade you were using...	Then do this...
The Release 10.7 model of summarization.	Run the Refresh Project Summary Amounts process.
The accumulation model that proceeded Release 10.7 and want to continue to use dual accumulation as a transition.	Run the Refresh Project Accumulators process to populate the project accumulator tables and the Refresh Employee Accumulation process to populate the employee accumulator tables.
	To run these processes, you must set the PA:Dual Accumulation Mode profile option to Yes.

- Repeat the process of checking and updating exceptions until none are found.

  Additional Information: Migrate to Enhanced Project Status Summarization Model on page 19-55.

Step 35: Correct Data for Bug #502256 in Multi-Org Tables

Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.0 or 3.1**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you are upgrading from an implementation that used multiple organizations in applications other than Oracle Projects.

Beginning with Release 10.7, Oracle projects supports multiple organizations in a single installation. To upgrade to this multi-org implementation of Oracle Projects, the existing seed data and transaction data must be associated with a specific organization.

The AutoInstall adadmin option Convert to Multiple Organization Architecture enables you to choose an operating unit to associate with the existing data. This option is implemented in the flag multi_org_flag. When you select the option, this flag is set to Y. It is set for a product group, not at the application level. (Also, in Release 10.7, you can install only one product group in each database.)

Therefore, when you upgrade from a release prior to 10.7 in which some projects are multiple-organization enabled and Oracle Projects is not, this flag is already set to Y. This indicates to AutoInstall that the installation is already converted to multi-org, and consequently, makes the adadmin option unavailable.

You must run the script pasetorg.sql to associate any existing PA transaction data with a valid organization for *all* multi-org tables in Oracle Projects (tables that include the column ORG_ID). The script prompts for an organization so it can make an association. It also removes all seed data with a null ORG_ID in the multi-org tables.

Because pasetorg.sql updates every row in all the Oracle Project Multi-org tables, it may take a long time to run. If it is likely to encounter a large amount of data, you can use the batch commit size parameter to limit the batch size.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pasetorg.sql <organization_name> \
  <commit_size>
```

> **Additional Information:**   Installation Utilities (*Oracle Applications Installation Manual, UNIX Edition*) and Technical Overview (*Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*)

Step 36: Restore Custom Messages Used in Transaction Control Extensions
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.1 or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Oracle Projects)**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you are using transaction control extensions and you saved the custom messages during the Preparing to Upgrade step 17.

The script patcxpst.sql recreates custom messages saved by the upgrade preparation step. These messages are inserted with their original message numbers. This script checks for and reports any custom messages that have a message number that is used by a message predefined by Oracle Projects. If messages are listed, you must change the numbers of your custom messages.

To run the script, type the following commands:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patcxpst.sql <APPS username> \
  <APPS password>
```

> **Note:** After you run this script, you need to regenerate the message file using the AutoInstall adadmin utility. Refer to the *Oracle Applications Installation Manual, UNIX Edition*

Define Transaction Control Extension Messages
Perform this portion of the step only if you have implemented transaction control extensions and defined custom messages.

Step 37: Reinstall Customized Client Extension Packages and Views
Complete for this release of Oracle Projects: **3.1 or 4.1**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have implemented client extensions. These include:

- Budget Calculation Extension
- Transaction Control Extension
- Labor Costing Extension
- Labor Transaction Extension
- Labor Billing Extension
- Billing Extension
- Project Security Extension
- Commitment View
- PTE Download Views

- PTE Client Extensions

Make Changes for Existing Client Extensions

If you implemented the labor transaction extension (PAXCCETB.pls) in version 3.1, be sure that you are using the correct API to check if an item already has related items. Replace the calls to the pa_cost_utils.cdl_exists procedure with a call to the pa_cost_utils.related_item_exists procedure. Refer to the example in the PAXCCETB.pls file for the exact syntax. This new procedure correctly determines whether your logic should create new related items or update existing related items.

Reinstall Your Client Extensions in APPS account

You must reinstall all of your customized client extension packages and views in the APPS account.

20

Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Purchasing and Oracle Public Sector Purchasing (PO) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you use AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Purchasing and Oracle Public Sector Purchasing uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Purchasing are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Upgrading FlexBuilder

In Release 10, you could create Accounting Flexfield code combinations automatically using the FlexBuilder feature. In Release 11, FlexBuilder has been

replaced by the Oracle Workflow Account Generator to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

Before the upgrade, you should be familiar with the way Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for information on the options you need to consider, and the upgrade steps you may need to complete to set up and use the Account Generator.

Upgrading AutoSource Rules

In Release 11, AutoInstall replaces your AutoSource rules with enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. The enhanced sourcing rules offer a more powerful and flexible way of sourcing. During the upgrade, AutoInstall assigns certain default options to your sourcing rules and ASL entries to accommodate the upgrade process. After you run AutoInstall and perform the After the Upgrade steps in this chapter, you can modify your newly enhanced sourcing rules and ASL entries to suit your individual business needs.

> **Additional Information:**   Automatic Sourcing *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide)*

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 3: Perform the following steps just BEFORE you run AutoInstall.	
❏ 1. Prepare for Upgrading AutoSource Rules	Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)

Category 3 Steps

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing. No one should be using the Oracle Applications system when you perform these steps.

Step 1: Prepare for Upgrading AutoSource Rules

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

When you upgrade your AutoSource rules, the upgrade script in AutoInstall requires that a value be provided for the profile options MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set.

The profile option MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set indicates which assignment set to use as your default sourcing assignment set. (In Release 11, sourcing rules and their assignment set names are displayed in the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window.) AutoInstall assigns all of your newly created sourcing rules to the assignment set name indicated in this profile option.

The profile option MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set should be set to the name of the default category set used by Purchasing. You can find this category set through the Default Category Sets window. From the Oracle Purchasing responsibility, choose Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets. Use the Category Set name that appears next to the Purchasing Functional Area.

To provide a value for the profile options:
1. Navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility.

2. Query for MRP: Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP: Sourcing Rule Category Set to make sure that values are provided.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps you perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and using the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Upgrade FlexBuilder	Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing) ⁄ System Administrator
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing.	
❏ **2.** Activate Transaction Managers	System Administrator
❏ **3.** Upgrade Notifications	System Administrator
❏ **4.** Recreate Custom Menus	System Administrator
❏ **5.** Verify and Modify Sourcing Rules	Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)
❏ **6.** Perform Additional Setup Steps	Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing) ⁄ System Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Upgrade FlexBuilder

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing) and System Administrator**

Reference manual or user guide needed: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for information on the options you need to consider, and the upgrade steps you may need to complete to set up and use the Account Generator.

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Purchasing or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing.

Step 2: Activate Transaction Managers
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

You need to activate the following transaction managers:

PO Document Approval Manager. Processes all approval and document control actions that are called by the approval workflow in Purchasing.

> **Additional Information:** Approval Workflows *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide)*

Receiving Transaction Manager. Processes all receiving transactions created in any receiving window in Purchasing when you're operating in the On-line processing mode.

> **Additional Information:** Receiving Transaction Processor *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide)*

To activate transaction managers for a single operating unit in Purchasing:

1. In the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window by choosing Concurrent > Manager > Administer.

2. Choose PO Document Approval Manager and then choose Activate. Choose Receiving Transaction Manager and then choose Activate. (If you don't see an Activate button, then the transaction manager is already activated.)

3. Set up and activate both the PO Document Approval Manager and Receiving Transaction Manager for each of your other defined operating units, if any.

> **Attention:** If you have a Multi-Org setup, then you need to set up and activate the PO Document Approval Manager and Receiving Transaction Manager for each of your operating units.

> **Additional Information:** Oracle Multiple Organizations *(Oracle Applications User's Guide)*

Step 3: Upgrade Notifications

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

In Release 11, document approval is handled by Oracle Workflow technology. That is, Workflow uses the approval controls and hierarchies you've already defined in Purchasing to route documents for approval. Because Workflow handles your approval process in the background, you can use Oracle Workflow Builder's easy interface to modify your approval process.

Approval notifications, therefore, are also handled by Workflow. In Release 11, the Notifications window has been replaced by a new Notifications Summary window, and all notifications are Workflow notifications. Release 11 will recognize your existing notifications only if you upgrade them to Workflow notifications.

> **Additional Information:** Viewing and Responding to Notifications and Approval Workflows *(Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide)*

To upgrade notifications, you need to run the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process after you have set up Purchasing. This process routes existing documents that are pending approval through the new approval workflow process, so that their notifications become Workflow notifications. You need to upgrade existing notifications only if you currently have documents from your previous (pre-Release 11) release of Purchasing pending approval.

To prepare to upgrade your existing notifications:

Be sure you complete the following prerequisites before you upgrade your existing notifications.

1. Reduce the number of existing notifications by responding to as many of them as you can.

2. This upgrade updates your notifications by routing them through whatever workflows you have now—for example, the default workflows included with

this release of Oracle Purchasing. In general, only those documents that are submitted for approval *after* you customize an approval workflow are affected by that customized workflow. So, if you want your existing notifications to be routed according to your customized workflow rather than the one that comes with this release of Purchasing, customize and test it before you perform these upgrade steps.

Customizing your workflow includes performing optional setup steps, which are described in these sections of your *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*: Set Up Document Creation Options, Set Up Approval Timeout Feature, and Modify Change Order Workflow Options. If you want existing documents that are pending approval to use these workflow options, then you must set up those options before you perform the upgrade steps in the following paragraphs.

To upgrade your existing notifications to Workflow notifications:

To upgrade your existing notifications, complete the following steps for each operating unit.

1. Navigate to the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process by choosing Reports > Run in the Oracle Purchasing responsibility.

2. In the Requests window, select Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 in the Request Name field.

3. Choose Submit Request to start the process.

4. After the process is complete (when it has changed from Pending to Completed in the Requests window), select it in the Requests window and choose View Output to see if any errors occurred during the upgrade.

   If you receive errors about Workflow not being set up properly, see the *Oracle Workflow Guide* for instructions on the proper set up of Oracle Workflow.

5. Later, ask document preparers and approvers to monitor the progress of their upgraded notifications in the Notifications Summary window.

   The Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process submits your existing notifications to the approval workflow process in Purchasing. If Workflow itself encounters errors during this upgrade process, it notifies the appropriate people (buyers, requisition preparers, or approvers) in the Notifications Summary window. For example, if there was a problem with the PO Document Approval Manager, Workflow would notify the appropriate person in the Notifications Summary window.

6. After all your notifications have been upgraded, you may want to disable the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process so that no one tries to use it later.

In the System Administrator responsibility, you disable concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window by deselecting the Enabled check box.

> **Additional Information:** Concurrent Programs Window (*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*)

Step 4: Recreate Custom Menus

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

If you created custom menus for Purchasing in Release 10 or Release 10.7 NCA (10SC), recreate those menus now.

> **Additional Information:** Menus Window and Overview of Function Security *(Oracle System Administrator's Guide)*

Step 5: Verify and Modify Sourcing Rules

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Automatic sourcing**

In previous releases, you used the AutoSource Rules window to enter sources for the items you purchase. In Release 11, AutoInstall has converted all of your existing AutoSource rules to the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. Specifically, it has performed the following upgrades:

- Created sourcing rule entries in the Sourcing Rule window in Purchasing, using the percentage splits you have already defined in the AutoSource Rules window in previous releases.

- Created global ASL entries, using your previous AutoSource rules.

- Assigned a supplier status of New to all of your suppliers in the Approved Supplier List window.

- Upgraded source documents with current effective dates as well as dates that don't become effective until some time in the future.

To verify or modify sourcing rules:

1. In the following directory, use your favorite text editor to check the upgrade.out file for any errors that might have occurred during the AutoInstall process:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
    ```

    where <dbname> is the value of your $ORACLE_SID or $TWO_TASK.

    If errors appear in this file, fix them as described. If you get an error that an MRP profile option was not properly set, you may need to provide a value for it.

    Additional Information: Preparing to Upgrade in this chapter.

2. If there are errors in the upgrade.out file, run the ASL Upgrade process in Purchasing after you have fixed the errors. If there are no errors, proceed to the next step.

    The ASL Upgrade process performs the same upgrade of your AutoSource rules as AutoInstall did, or attempted to do. In the Purchasing responsibility, navigate to Reports > Run and select ASL Upgrade in the Request Name field. In the Parameters window that appears, enter a Supplier Status of New and an Upgrade Documents From option of Current and future rules. Then submit the request. "New" and "Current and future rules" are the only options supported by the ASL Upgrade process.

3. To verify once more that your AutoSource rules have been upgraded, open the Requisitions window in Purchasing and, in the Item field, enter an item number that previously had an AutoSource rule. Then navigate to the Source Details alternative region. If the correct Document Type, Document, Supplier and supplier Site appear as defaults, then your AutoSource rules have been successfully updated to the enhanced sourcing rules and ASL entries.

4. Once you are satisfied that your AutoSource rules have been upgraded, you may want to disable the ASL Upgrade process so that no one tries to use it later.

    In the System Administrator responsibility, you disable concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window by deselecting the Enabled check box.

    Additional Information: Concurrent Programs Window (*Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*)

5. In the Purchasing application, navigate to the Define Supplier Statuses, Approved Supplier List, Sourcing Rule, and Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments windows to make any changes, additions, or enhancements to your sourcing rules and ASL entries.

> **Additional Information:** Automatic Sourcing (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide)*

Step 6: Perform Additional Setup Steps

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Purchasing) and System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Purchasing**

Perform additional Release 11 setup steps as described in your *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide*:

■ Start the Send Notifications for Purchasing Documents process (Required)

■ Set Up Document Creation Options (Required with defaults)

■ Set Up Approval Timeout Feature (Optional)

■ Start Workflow Background Process (Optional)

■ Modify Change Order Workflow Options (Optional)

You won't need to perform some of these steps if you have already completed them prior to running the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process.

> **Additional Information:** Setup Overview (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*)

21

Oracle Quality

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Quality (QA) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Quality with AutoInstall.

> **Note:** Oracle Quality uses single organization architecture (SOA).

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Quality, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Quality	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Quality.	
❑ **1.** Configure Profile Options (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Quality)
❑ **2.** Recreate Results and Import Database Views (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Quality)

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following step before anyone uses the features of Oracle Quality listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 1: Configure New Profile Options (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Quality)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Quality User's Guide, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Quality for PO inspection or Statware's statistics engine**

Oracle Quality has defined new profile options. You should configure QA:PO Inspection and QA:Statistics Engine to meet your business requirements.

> **Additional Information:** Profile Options, *Oracle Quality User's Guide, Release 11*; Setting Your Personal User Profile, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

Step 2: Recreate Database Views (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Quality)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Quality User's Guide, Oracle Manufacturing Open Interfaces Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Quality Collection Import**

If you plan to import updated quality results for collection plans created prior to Release 11—when the functionality to update information in the Quality data repository was introduced—you must re-create database views for these collection plans.

> **Additional Information:** Updating and Deleting Collection Plans, *Oracle Quality User's Guide, Release 11;* Collection Import, *Oracle Manufacturing Open Interfaces Manual, Release 11*

22

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables and Oracle Public Sector Receivables (AR) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables with AutoInstall.

The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Receivables and Oracle Public Sector Receivables use multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.

Important Upgrade Steps

Some of the upgrade tasks for Oracle Receivables are potentially time-consuming or especially important to your upgrade process. This section alerts you to important decisions that you need to make during your upgrade or implementation.

Upgrading FlexBuilder

In Release 10, you could create Accounting Flexfield code combinations automatically using the FlexBuilder feature. In Release 11, FlexBuilder is replaced

by the Oracle Workflow Account Generator to provide implementation teams with greater flexibility and a better user interface with Oracle Workflow.

Before the upgrade, you need to review the way Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Refer to the FlexBuilder chapter in this manual for information on the options you need to consider and the upgrade steps you may need to complete to set up and use the Account Generator.

Important Changes to Functionality

The following changes and enhancements to Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your product-specific documentation set for complete information about product functionality.

Define Additional Application Rule Set

You can choose which Application Rule Set you want to use. Application Rule Sets determine the steps that Receivables uses to apply payments to your customer's open debit items. Transactions usually consist of line items, tax, freight, and finance charges, or a combination of these. Depending on your business needs, you can reduce each associated charge proportionately, close the outstanding tax amount first, or apply a payment to the line and tax amounts and use any remaining portion to reduce the freight and finance charges.

Review, Update, and Define System Options

We have added several new fields and options to the System Options window that can affect how you use Oracle Receivables. For example, you can define a flexible tax defaulting hierarchy, specify a rounding error account, and choose whether you will use tax inclusive tax codes.

Define GL Tax Assignments for Natural Account Tax Codes

In some countries and implementations, your chart of accounts may be constructed around VAT compliance. When using this method, you assign one or more revenue accounts to a tax code. Then, when recording a transaction to one of your revenue accounts, Receivables will record the tax on that transaction to the VAT account assigned to this revenue account.

You can now assign tax codes to Natural Accounts, which lets the Receivables Transactions Workbench and AutoInvoice program automatically default tax codes when you enter or import transactions. You can also choose to validate the tax code

against the Natural account of the Revenue account when you complete transactions in the Transactions Workbench.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The sections that follow the checklist are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software.	
❑ 1. Rename Customized Tax Structure (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
❑ 2. Create Tax Vendor Extension View Scripts (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❑ 3. Modify Batch Commit Sizes in Upgrade Scripts (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
Category 3: You should perform the following step just BEFORE you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.	
❑ 4. Drop Obsolete Archive/Purge Tables (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Rename Customized Tax Structure (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Complete this step only if you have created a customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure. AutoInstall for Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables creates the following default Sales Tax Location Flexfield structures:

- Province

- Province.City

- City

- State.City

- State.County.City

- No Validation - Country

If you used any of these names for your customized flexfield structure, you must rename the customized structure to prevent AutoInstall from overwriting it.

> **Note:** You can omit this step in subsequent upgrades if you name your customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure something other than one of the six default structures.

Step 2: Create Tax Vendor Extension View Scripts (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized the Tax Vendor Extension views. AutoInstall recreates these views and will overwrite any customizations that you have made. If you have customized any of the views, be sure to save your customized copies or write a script to recreate each

of the custom views. You will reinstall these views in the After the Upgrade steps listed later in this chapter.

> **Attention:** Taxware (previously known as AVP) and Vertex software is included in Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11. If you previously integrated Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 10 with AVP or Vertex using software supplied by the Oracle Design and Migration Services and customized any of the views, ensure that you have saved your customized copies or written a script to recreate each of the custom views. AutoInstall for Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11 will recreate Taxware and Vertex views overwriting any customizations that you have made.

> **Additional Information:** Implementing the Tax Vendor Extension, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

For Release 10.6 and subsequent releases, the following views exist in the APPS schema. For Release 10.5 and earlier releases, these views exist in the base schema.

View	Used by
SO_TAX_LINES_SUMMARY_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Entry.
SO_TAX_LINES_CREDIT_CHECK_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Entry.
TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V	AutoInvoice program.
TAX_LINES_RECURR_INVOICE_V	Recurring Invoice program (Copy Transactions window).

For Release 10.7, the following views were added to the APPS schema.

View	Used by
TAX_LINES_CREATE_V	Transactions Workbench.
TAX_LINES_DELETE_V	Transactions Workbench.
TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V	Transactions Workbench.

You can complete this step before you run AutoInstall. However, if you subsequently customize any of these views, ensure that you recreate your view script(s).

The following views are *not* available in Oracle Receivables Release 11:

View	Used by
TAX_LINES_INQUIRY_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Entry.
TAX_LINES_RECREATE_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Entry.
TAX_VENDER_JURISDICTIONS_V	Sales Orders window in Oracle Order Entry.
TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V	Recurring Invoice program (Copy Transactions window).

Perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables. No one should be using the Oracle Applications system when you perform these steps.

Step 3: Modify Batch Commit Sizes in Upgrade Scripts (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5, or 10.6**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Your Oracle Database Administrator (Database Administrator) can determine the appropriate commit size for each script according to the size of your rollback segments.

The following scripts are in $AR_TOP/upgrade/sql:

ar700u04.sql	ar700u15.sql	ar700u16.sql
ar700u67.sql	ar707u12.sql	ar715ac2.sql
ar716u12.sql	ar718ac3.sql	ar718ac4.sql
ar729u67.sql.	ar731u15.sql	ar733u16.sql
ar733u62.sql	arplbupg.sql	ra700p43.sql
ra700pg3.sql	ra700u03.sql	ra700uc2.sql
ra700u76.sql	ra700uc1.sql	ra700ug1.sql
ra700uc3.sql	ra700uc4.sql	ra700ug4.sql

ra700ug2.sql	ra700ug3.sql	ra714u41.sql
ra700ug5.sql	ra723u43.sql	ra729u41.sql
ra722u41.sql	ra732u43.sql	ar732uoe.sql
ra729u43.sql	ra700u45.sql	

Category 3 Steps

You should perform these steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Receivables. No one should be using Oracle Applications when you perform these steps.

Step 4: Drop Obsolete Archive/Purge Tables (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.6**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

> **Attention:**   This step is *not* required if you have applied the Archive/Purge patch (318278).

The definitions for the following Archive/Purge tables have been modified since the Limited Production release of Archive/Purge. So, the tables need to be dropped. All data contained in these tables will be lost.

- AR_ARCHIVE_HEADER

- AR_ARCHIVE_DETAIL

- AR_ARCHIVE_CONTROL_DETAIL

Run the following script to display the number of rows contained in each table:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AR username>/<AR password> @arprgtab.sql
```

Oracle Receivables does not support transferring the data to new tables. If you want to retain the information, you must take the necessary steps to back up the tables before executing the script that drops the tables.

To drop the obsolete Archive/Purge tables, run the following script:

```
$ sqlplus <AR username>/<AR password> @arprgdrp.sql
```

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Review Upgraded Receipt Classes and Payment Methods	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.	
❏ **2.** Create Indexes on Transaction Flexfield Columns (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **3.** Recreate Tax Vendor Extension Views (Conditionally Required)	Database Administrator
❏ **4.** Review and Update Profile Options (Recommended)	System Administrator
❏ **5.** Define Additional Application Rule Set (Recommended)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **6.** Review, Update, and Define System Options (Recommended)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **7.** Define Tax Inclusive Tax Codes and Tax Groups (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **8.** Define International Tax Code (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
❏ **9.** Define GL Tax Assignments for Natural Account Tax Codes (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.	
❏ **10.** Risk Eliminate Factored Receipts (Conditionally Required)	Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables	
Steps	**Performed by**
❏ **11.** Add Customized Reports to Receivables All Report Security Group (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Review Upgraded Receipt Classes and Payment Methods

Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

Receipt Class

Use Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Receipt Classes to specify processing steps such as confirmation, remittance, and bank clearance that you require for your receipts. Ensure that you have defined all the receipt classes you will need for processing your receipts.

We have enhanced the Receipt Classes window to provide you with more options on choosing how receipts belonging to a receipt class can be cleared. You can now choose from the following options:

Directly	implies that no explicit clearing is required.
By Matching	implies that the receipts have to be cleared using either the Reconcile Receipts window in Oracle Receivables or the Manual or Automatic Reconciliation window in Oracle Cash Management.
By Automatic	implies that the receipts will be automatically cleared when you run the Automatic Clearing program.

Validation in the Receipt Classes window assists you in selecting the appropriate combinations of the options offered. If the Require Confirmation box is checked (set to Yes), the Remittance Method must be either Standard, Factoring, or Standard and Factoring. Subsequently, if the Remittance Method is Standard, Factoring, or

Standard and Factoring, the Clearance Method must be either By Automatic Clearing or By Matching.

AutoInstall will update the setting of the Remittance and Clearance Method for all receipt classes that are incompatible with the new validation in this window.

> **Additional Information:** Receipt Classes, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Payment Method - Remittance Bank

Ensure that you have defined all of the payment methods that you will need to store remittance bank and accounting information for your receipts. There are four new fields in this window, which AutoInstall will populate with default settings. Review these settings and update them as required.

Field Name	Default Setting
Clearing Days	<null> (e.g. 0 clearing days)
Risk Elimination Days	<null> (e.g. 0 risk elimination days)
Short Term Debt account	same value as the Factoring account
Override Bank	Yes

AutoInstall will set the Remittance account in the associated payment methods to the same account as the Confirmation account for all prior receipt classes where the remittance account has not been defined. Review these settings and update them as required. You can define and update payment methods and the associated accounts using the Receipt Classes window.

> **Additional Information:** Payment Methods, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Short Term Debt Account

If you changed your Short Term Debt account to an account that is different from the Factoring account for any of your payment methods, you need to update the Short Term Debt accounts to your new account for all factored receipts that use these payment methods.

Run the following script to update your Short Term Debt account for these receipts:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar760p28.sql
```

> **Additional Information:**   Payment Methods, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.

Step 2: Create Indexes on Transaction Flexfield Columns (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

If you use the AutoInvoice program to create indexes on your transaction flexfield columns, proceed with this step. Otherwise, omit this step and proceed to the next.

You need to perform this step if you want to query transaction flexfield information in your invoice headers and lines. In addition, creating indexes can speed up the validation portions of the AutoInvoice program. You should define non-unique, concatenated indexes on the following tables and columns that you use for your Transaction Flexfield header and line information:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	interface_header_attribute1-15
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15

Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window and query the flexfield called Line Transaction Flexfield. Note each context of this Flexfield and, for each context, note which segments are enabled using interface line attribute columns from the RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL table.

Then, create non-unique, concatenated indexes for the same interface line attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL and RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL tables and for the same interface header attribute columns in the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL table.

If you have only one context defined, you need to create only one index for each table in the list. However, if you have multiple contexts defined, you may want to

create multiple indexes per table. You should define the combination of indexes that best meets your needs. Use the following example to help you decide how to set up your indexes.

Suppose your Line Transaction Flexfield has three contexts that are set up as follows:

Flexfield Context	Attribute Columns assigned to Enabled Segments
Context1	Interface_line_attribute1
Context1	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute1
Context2	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute9

You could create three indexes per table, one for each context. Or, you could create just two indexes—one for context3 and another for context1. The latter would be used by context2 because context1 has the same first two attribute columns as context2.

If you have licensed Oracle Projects:

If users will be querying transactions based on project numbers, then create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_PA1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL:

- interface_header_context
- interface_header_attribute1

If you have licensed Oracle Order Entry:

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL:

- interface_line_attribute 1
- interface_line_attribute2

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE2 on the interface_line_attribute6 column in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL:

> **Additional Information:** Importing Transactions Using AutoInvoice, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Step 3: Recreate Tax Vendor Extension Views (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Tax Vendor Extension**

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized any of the following Tax Vendor Extension views:

- SO_TAX_LINES_SUMMARY_V
- SO_TAX_LINES_CREDIT_CHECK_V
- TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
- TAX_LINES_RECURR_INVOICE_V
- TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V
- TAX_LINES_CREATE_V
- TAX_LINES_DELETE_V
- TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V

Add New Columns to Views
Before your upgrade, you made copies of your customized views or created a script to reinstall your views. Before reinstalling these views, you need to add the additional columns created in Release 10.6 and Release 11.

> **Note:** Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11 is fully integrated with Vertex and Taxware (previously known as AVP).

All of the views listed in the Preparing to Upgrade Step 2 (Create Tax Vendor Extension View Scripts) have new columns. These columns should be taken into consideration when making any customizations.

Recreate and Rename Customized Views

To reduce the number of upgrade steps in future releases and to allow installations with multiple organizations to control which users can call an installed third-party application for tax calculations, Oracle Receivables uses a naming structure to group views into sets.

> **Note:** If you have made customizations to a view(s), you must rename *all* views to meet the new naming standard.

The following view sets are available:

Oracle	(no additional naming structure)
TaxWare(AVP)	_A added to the view name
Vertex	_V added to the view name
Custom 1	_1 added to the view name
Custom 2	_2 added to the view name
Custom 3	_3 added to the view name
Custom 4	_4 added to the view name
Custom 5	_5 added to the view name

For example, the view TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V would have the following naming structure:

Oracle	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
Taxware	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_A
Vertex	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_V
Custom 1	TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_1

Step 4: Review and Update Profile Options (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables includes new profile options for Release 11. AutoInstall provides default values at the site level for all these options. Review and update these options to customize your application's functionality.

Select System Administrator as your responsibility and navigate to the Find System Profile Values window. Check Site and Profiles with No Values as the Display options. You can execute a Find or use wildcards such as AR:% and TAX:% in the Profile region to query Receivables profile options or only those specific to tax. You can accept the default site values or enter new ones. You can also assign values to these profile options at the Application, Responsibility, and User levels.

> **NOTE:** If you want to control tax from your revenue account — use the account method for VAT compliance — set the profile option GL Set of Books Name at the Responsibility level to correspond to the Receivables Set of Books Name for each of the AR responsibilities. You can identify the Accounts Receivable set of books assigned to a User Responsibility by reviewing the Profile Option MO:Operating Unit for each Responsibility.

The following table lists these new profile options and their default values (a blank space indicates that there is no default value):

Profile Option	Site Default Value
New in Release 11:	
AR: Commit Between Validation	
AR: Enable Cross Currency	No
Tax: Use Tax Vendor *	Yes
New in Release 10.7:	
AR: Allow Update of Existing Sales Credits	
AR: Default Exchange Rate Type	
AR: Customers - Enter Alternate Fields	Yes
AR: Sort Customer Reports by Alternate Fields	No

Profile Option	Site Default Value
AR: Zengin Character Set **	
Tax: Use Tax Vendor	Yes
Tax: Calculate Tax on Credit Memos	No
New in Release 10.6:	
Default Country	
Tax: Allow Override of Tax Code	No
Tax: Allow Override of Customer Exemptions	
AR: Customer Merge Commit Size	
New in Release 10.5:	
AR: Change Customer on Transaction	
AR: Close Periods - Run Collection Effectiveness	
AR: Automatic Contact Numbering	
AR: GL Transfer Balance Test-available at all levels	
AR: Transaction Flexfield QuickPick Attribute	

* The profile option Tax: Use Tax Vendor was optional in Oracle Receivables Release 10.7. However, this profile option is required in Release 11. The default value is Yes. If you are using Oracle's Tax Engine, you need to change this value to No. If your installation uses multiple organizations, this option lets your system administrator control which users can call an installed third party application for tax calculations.

** You need to define the profile option AR: Zengin Character Set if you will be using any of the Japanese functionality within Oracle Receivables (for example, importing bank files in the Zengin format using AutoLockbox).

> **Additional Information:**   Appendix B, Overview of Receivables User Profile Options, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Step 5: Define Additional Application Rule Set (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

An Application Rule Set is a user-definable hierarchy that manages the application of payments when you manually apply receipts or when you run Post Quick Cash. You can choose one of the Application Rule Sets that Oracle Receivables provides or define your own. You can assign an Application Rule Set to your Transaction types and at the System Options level.

Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11 provides the following Application Rule Sets:

Line First - Tax After   Applies payments to the open Line amounts first followed by the Tax, Freight, and Finance Charges. This is the default.

Line First - Tax Prorate   Applies payments proportionately to the open Line and Tax amount for each line. This rule set then applies the remaining amount to any Freight and Finance Charges.

Prorate All   Applies payments proportionately to the open Line, Tax, Freight, and Finance Charges.

You can define additional Application Rule Sets in the Application Rule Sets window.

> **Additional Information:** Application Rule Sets, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

> **Note:** If you use the Oracle Applications Multiple Organization Support feature to use multiple sets of books for one Receivables installation, you need to assign an Application Rule Set to your Transaction Types and/or at the System Options level for *each* of your organizations.

Step 6: Review, Update, and Define System Options (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for *each* product installation.

Oracle Receivables Release 11 has several new fields in the System Options window. The following table lists these new fields and their default values (a blank space indicates that there is no default value):

System Option	Site Default Value
Release 11:	
Rounding Error Account *	
Tax Vendor Views	Oracle
Inclusive Tax Used	No
Hierarchy for Tax Code Defaulting	(same as previous setup; otherwise, 1-Site, 2-Customer, 3-Product)
Application Rule Set	Line First - Tax After
Release 10.7:	
Tax Code for VAT Default	
Discount Basis	

* Receivables uses this account to record gains or losses incurred when you create applications between fixed rate currencies of the Euro. You must define a Rounding Error Account regardless of whether you create applications for fixed rate currencies.

Sales Tax Location Flexfield

All components of your Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure are mandatory when entering addresses in Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11.

Customers in the United States who wish to use the Tax Vendor Extension to integrate with either the Taxware (AVP) or Vertex tax calculation packages should

use the State.County.City structure as this structure provides the correct sales tax rate. The No Validation - Country structure is most appropriate for a VAT system.

> **Additional Information:** Defining a Sales Tax Location Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

Define Tax System Options

To ensure that the Tax Engine functions properly, review all Tax System options and update them as required. When you save your system options, Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables will initiate five concurrent requests. These requests will create PL/SQL packages to interface between the tax windows and tax tables. A message will appear on your screen indicating that these requests have been submitted.

Be sure to verify that the five concurrent requests complete without error. To check the status of your requests, navigate to the Requests window. The log files for each request should indicate that you have installed five PL/SQL packages. Navigate to the end of each file to verify that the concurrent process has completed successfully.

> **Attention:** Pay special attention to the following information:
>
> - You must initiate these five concurrent requests each time you upgrade Oracle Receivables. To do this, simply type over one of the characters of your Location Flexfield Structure name, then save your work. Receivables automatically submits the concurrent requests at this point.
>
> - You should not change your Location Flexfield Structure after entering transactions.

> **Additional Information:** Calculating Tax, System Options and Tax Vendor Extension, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Step 7: Define Tax Inclusive Tax Codes and Groups (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for *each* product installation.

You can enter and display transaction lines either exclusive or inclusive of tax. Tax Inclusive indicates that the line amount for an item includes the tax for that item. If you do not want to include tax with the each line item, proceed to the next step.

Define Inclusive Tax Codes in the Tax Codes and Rates window. Use the Tax Groups window to define Inclusive Tax Groups.

> **Attention:** Ensure that you enter the tax account correctly. Once you save the record, you cannot update this information. Additionally, once you enable the tax inclusive feature for a tax code you cannot update it.

> **Additional Information:** Tax Inclusive, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

Step 8: Define International Tax Code (Conditionally Required)
Complete for this release: **All**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

International sites are sites located in countries that are different from the Default Country that you defined in the System Options window. Proceed to the next step if any one of the following conditions is true:

- You will not be using tax with Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables Release 11.

- You do not have international sites.

- You have previously defined an International Tax Code.

- You use separate transaction types to process International transactions and the International transaction types have Tax Calculation set to No.

- You are not using tax codes in your tax processing — both the Use Tax Code for Customer Site and the Use Tax Code for Customer options are set to No in the System Options window.

Tax Calculation Setting

Both AutoInvoice and the Transactions window will give an error during validation if tax cannot be calculated and your transaction type has Tax Calculation set to Yes. If you have international sites, you should set either the Use Tax Code for Customer Site or the Use Tax Code for Customer options in the System Options window to Yes, then proceed with this step.

Defining Tax Codes

You may wish to calculate tax on transactions in your home country but not on all international transactions. Tax codes can be defined at a tax rate of zero and assigned to all international sites for which you do not wish to calculate tax. Tax codes allow a tax line to be created for the transaction with a zero tax amount; this lets the transaction pass validation. At the same time, Receivables will calculate the correct tax amounts for sites in your home country and for foreign sites that have a tax rate other than zero.

To do this, first define a tax code with a tax rate of zero. You can use an active tax code that is already defined, or create a new one.

To create a new tax code, navigate to the Tax Codes and Rates window. Enter a tax code called INTL, for example. The tax type can be either Sales Tax or VAT, but the tax rate should be zero. Choose to allow ad hoc changes if required. The default tax account is the tax account that you defined in the System Options window, but you can change it. When you have finished, save your work.

Assigning Tax Codes

Assign a tax code to all of your international bill-to and ship-to sites where a tax amount other than zero should be calculated. Once all of these sites have been

updated, you can use a script to assign the null values left with your zero-rated tax code.

> **Warning:**   **Pay special attention to the following information:**
>
> ■ **Before running this script, be sure you have tax codes assigned to all international sites for which you wish to calculate tax. The script updates only sites that have null tax codes.**
>
> ■ **The script updates tax codes at the site level. If the system option Use Tax Code for Customer Site is set to No, even though the script will update site level tax codes, it will have no effect on your tax validation because the tax engine will not be checking site level tax codes during tax processing. In this case, if the system option Use Tax Code for Customer is set to Yes, you can manually assign tax codes to Customers or write your own script to assign tax codes automatically.**

Additional Information: Calculating Tax, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

If you are *not* using the Oracle Applications Multiple Organization support feature to use multiple sets of books for one Receivables installation, run the following script to update all the null tax codes for your international sites with your INTL tax code:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar750u74.sql
```

The script prompts you for the tax code to assign to your international sites. Be sure to enter the tax codes correctly. If you make a mistake and enter a tax code that is valid (for example, one that is defined in your Tax Codes and Rates window), but not the correct INTL tax code, you can roll back your change using the following command:

```
SQL> rollback;
```

You can then rerun the script. If it produces a report listing records that still have null tax codes, you have probably entered a tax code that is not defined in the Tax Codes and Rates window. In this case, rerun the script and enter the correct INTL tax code.

When you are sure that the changes you have made are correct and the script does not list any more null tax codes, save your changes using the following command:

```
SQL> commit;
```

If you use the Oracle Applications Multiple Organization Support feature, you need to update the null tax codes for your international sites for *each* of your organizations. To do this, run the following script:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select organization_id, name
     from hr_operating_units hr,
     ar_system_parameters_all sp
     where hr.organization_id = sp.org_id
```

For each ORGANIZATION_ID returned, enter the following:

```
SQL> exec fnd_client_info.set_org_context('org_id');
```

where org_id is the ORGANIZATION_ID number. Then, run the following script:

```
SQL> @ar75u74.sql
```

Save your changes using the following command:

```
SQL> commmit;
```

Step 9: Define GL Tax Assignments for Natural Account Tax Codes (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables Tax Manual**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables**

If you want to use the Account Method for VAT compliance, you can set up Receivables to use the tax code assigned to the Natural Account segment of your Revenue account when you manually enter transactions or import them using AutoInvoice.

> **Note:** If you use multiple sets of books architecture, you need to perform this step for *each* product installation.

> **Note:** You do not need to perform this step if you have already completed it as part of your Oracle Payables or Oracle General Ledger upgrade.

Navigate to the GL Tax Options Window to assign tax codes to the natural account segment of your Revenue account.

> **Additional Information:** Controlling Tax from your Revenue Account and Implementing Value Added Tax, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the affected features of Oracle Receivables or Oracle Public Sector Receivables.

Step 10: Risk-Eliminate Factored Receipts (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **10.4, 10.5**

Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Oracle Receivables)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Automatic Clearing**

If you factor receipts, you need to complete this step.

As of Release 10.6 and later, you can clear or risk eliminate factored receipts automatically by submitting the Automatic Clearing program. Clearing factored receipts creates a short term debt to account for your risk in case of customer default. Factored receipts are eligible for risk elimination y days after the Maturity Date of the receipt, where y is the number of Lead Days defined in the Receipt Classes window. Risk elimination debits your Factoring account and credits your Short Term Debt account.

If you have factored receipts, you should run the Automatic Clearing program to eliminate the risk on those receipts whose maturity dates have passed. If you do not run the Automatic Clearing program now, the first time you do it will pick up these receipts and result in more risk elimination than usual.

Use the Run Automatic Clearing window to eliminate the risk on factored receipts with maturity dates that have passed. Use the following parameters to run the Automatic Clearing program:

- Clear Remitted Receipts: No

- Clear Discounted Receipts: No

- Eliminate Risk: Yes

> **Additional Information:** Payment Methods, Automatic Clearing, and Automatic Receipts in *Oracle Receivables User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide*

Step 11: Add Customized Reports to Receivables All Report Security Group (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

To include your customized reports in the list of those available to users through the Submit Requests window, enter them in the Receivables All request security group.

> **Additional Information:** Define Report Groups, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's User's Guide*

23

Oracle Sales and Marketing

This chapter explains how to prepare Oracle Sales and Marketing (AS) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. The overview explains how modifications in the new version of Oracle Sales and Marketing may affect your upgrade. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Sales and Marketing uses multiple organization architecture

Overview

This overview summarizes the significant aspects of upgrading Oracle Sales and Marketing.

Important Changes to Functionality

The following are changes and enhancements to Oracle Sales and Marketing that may affect the way you use the product after you upgrade. Refer to your product-specific documentation for complete information about product functionality.

Volume forecasting

Profiles have been added to Release 11 to allow your sales organization to perform volume forecasting. The profile OSM:Volume Forecast Enabled is defaulted to No.

Important Upgrade Steps

Currently Oracle Sales and Marketing has no upgrade preparation steps. However, it is important to perform the upgrade steps for the products that it is dependent on.

> **Additional Information:** See the sections on upgrade steps for Oracle Receivables, Oracle Order Entry, and Oracle Human Resources in this manual

Run Oracle Receivables Upgrade Preparation Steps

Make sure that the Oracle Receivables upgrade preparation steps are run when you upgrade Oracle Receivables. This ensures that your Oracle Sales and Marketing application works correctly for Release 11.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Sales and Marketing, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Sales and Marketing	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to the affected feature.	
❏ **12.** Set Profile OSM:Volume Forecast Enabled to Yes at Site Level (Conditionally Required)	Technical Specialist (Oracle Sales and Marketing)/System Administrator

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the affected feature.

Step 12: Run Oracle Receivables Upgrade Finishing Steps (Conditionally Required)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases (and you use the Volume Forecast feature)**

Performed by: **System Administrator/Technical Specialist (Oracle Sales and Marketing)**

Reference manual needed: **Yes**

Do before anyone uses: **Volume Forecast**

1. Log in as SYSADMIN application user.

2. Select Sales and Marketing Supervisor responsibility.

3. Navigate to Setup - Profiles.

4. Query for OSM:Volume Forecast Enabled.

5. Change value at site level to Yes.

24

Oracle Self-Service Web Applications

This chapter lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Self-Service Web Applications (ICX) with AutoInstall.

> **Note:**   Oracle Self-Service Web Applications uses single organization architecture (SOA).

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Self-Service Web Applications, and a detailed description of each step.The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Self-Service Web Applications	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Self-Service Web Applications.	
❏ 1. Verify That Oracle ConText Is Installed and Running	System Administrator
❏ 2. If Appropriate, Reapply Extensions and Customizations	System Administrator
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Self-Service Web Applications.	
❏ 3. Run ICXSTCPI and ICXSTCT Scripts (Web Store)	System Administrator
❏ 4. Run ICXRQCPI and ICXRQCT Scripts (Web Requisitions)	System Administrator

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Self-Service Web Applications.

Step 1: Verify That Oracle ConText Is Installed and Running
Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Step 2: Reapply Extensions and Customizations
Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

If appropriate, reapply any unprotected extensions and customizations. These may include:

- Custom PL/SQL in Descriptive Flexfield hooks (Web Expenses users only)

- Custom PL/SQL in Oracle Workflow definitions

- Modified Workflow messages

- Modified FND Messages (Web Expenses users only)

- Modified HTML online help

- Modified Web Application Dictionary inquiry flows and transaction flows.
    Additional Information: See the Common Modules chapter for further information.

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Self-Service Web Applications listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 3: Run ICXSTCPI and ICXSTCT Scripts (Web Store)
Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Web Customers**

If you installed Oracle Web Customers and intend to use the Web Store, you must run two SQL scripts, ICXSTCPI and ICXSTCT. The ICXSTCPI script drops and then creates the ConText Policy and the Index for the Web Store. The ICXSTCT script creates triggers against the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table to maintain the ConText index:

```
$ cd $ICX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ICXSTCPI.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ICXSTCT.sql <INV_username>
```

Step 4: Run ICXRQCPI and ICXRQCT Scripts (Web Requisitions)
Perform if you are upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Web Employees**

If you installed Oracle Web Employees and intend to use Web Requisitions, you must run two SQL scripts, ICXRQCPI and ICXRQCT. The ICXSTCPI script drops and then creates the ConText Policy and the Index for Web Requisitions. The ICXRQCT script creates triggers against the PO_LINES_ALL table to maintain the ConText index:

```
$ cd $ICX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ICXRQCPI.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ICXRQCT.sql <PO_username>
```

25

Oracle Service

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Service (CS) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Service with AutoInstall.

> **Note:** Oracle Service uses single organization architecture (SOA).

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Service for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Service	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 2: You can perform the following steps AFTER you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.	
❑ 1. Check for Multiple Service Requests Associated with a Single RMA	Technical Specialist (Oracle Service)

Category 2 Steps

You can perform the following steps after you unload the installation directory for your new Oracle Applications software.

Step 1: Check for Multiple Service Requests Associated with a Single RMA

Perform if you are upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist (Oracle Service)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

If you have RMAs (return material authorizations) that are associated with more than one service request, you must modify your records prior to installing Oracle Service Release 11 so that each RMA is linked to only one service request. During the upgrade process, the one-to-one mapping is enforced by the addition of a unique index on the service requests table.

Run the cspupg2.sql script to view all occurrences of RMAs associated with multiple service requests:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @cspupg2.sql
```

The list that the script generates is cspupg2.lst. Use it to correct all violations in the Service Requests window.

> **Additional Information:**   Entering Service Requests, *Oracle Service User's Guide*

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Service, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Service	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ 1. Grant Permissions to APPS User	Database Administrator
❏ 2. Create ConText Policies and Indexes	Database Administrator

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Grant Permissions to APPS User

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Run the cspupg1.sql script to grant permissions to the APPS user:

```
$ cd $CS_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus ctxsys/<ctxsys password> @cspupg1.sql <APPS username>
```

Step 2: Create ConText Policies and Indexes

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Service Technical Reference Manual**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

To create ConText policies and indexes, follow these steps:

1. Start the ConText servers with Q, D, L, and M personalities:

    ```
    $ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
    $ ctxsrv -user ctxsys/<ctxsys password> -personality QDL -log ctx.log &
    $ ctxsrv -user ctxsys/<ctxsys password> -personality M -log ctx.log &
    ```

    These two commands will start two ConText servers—one with Query (Q), DDL (D), and Linguistics (L) personalities and another with DML (M) personality to update indexes. More servers can be started with similar personalities to share the load for better performance. You can also start your ConText servers by using the ctxctl utility. You can view the status of the servers by using either the ctxctl utility or the ConText administration tools.

    Additional Information: Administering ConText, *Oracle ConText Option Administrator's Guide*

2. Drop the four policies and indexes (if they are already present):

```
$ cd $CS_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @csctxdpi.sql
```

3. Create the four policies and indexes:

```
$ cd $CS_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @csctxcpi.sql
```

26

Oracle Work in Process

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Work in Process (WIP) for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Work in Process with AutoInstall. Review this information carefully to ensure a smooth upgrade.

> **Note:** Oracle Work in Process uses multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA).

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Work in Process for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Work in Process	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 1: You can perform the following steps BEFORE you receive your new Oracle Applications software and use your existing file system.	
❏ 1. Close Discrete Jobs (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)
❏ 2. Purge Data (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)
❏ 3. Clear Open Job and Schedule Interface (Conditionally Required)	Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)

Oracle Work in Process	
❏ **4.** Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)

Category 1 Steps

You can perform the following steps before you receive your new Oracle Applications software and you use your existing file system.

Step 1: Close Discrete Jobs (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You should close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close. This allows your upgrade process to run faster because less data needs to be upgraded.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10 (character mode):

See Close Discrete Jobs *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See Discrete Job Close (*Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10S*C) for more information.

Step 2: Purge Data (Recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Your upgrade will run faster if you should purge all discrete and repetitive data that you no longer need.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10 (character mode):

See Purge Job/Schedule Information *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):

See Discrete Job Purge and Repetitive Schedule Purge *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10S*C) for more information.

Step 3: Clear Open Job and Schedule Interface (Conditionally Required)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

All unprocessed records must be removed from the Open Job and Schedule Interface (WIP_JOB_SCHEDULE_ INTERFACE) table before you upgrade. You can manually remove these records using SQL*Plus, or you can import them into Work in Process.

In Release 10, you use the Import Jobs/Schedules form to submit the WIP Mass Load program and import unprocessed records. In Release 10SC, you can use the Import Jobs and Schedules window. If a record (row) fails validation and is not imported, an error message is generated. If you are using Oracle Work in Process, Release 10SC, Production 16, you can view these errors and update failed rows using the Pending Jobs and Schedules window.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10 (character mode):

See Import Jobs/Schedules *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* and Open Job and Repetitive Schedule Interface *(Oracle Manufacturing Implementation Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10SC Production 15 or earlier:

See Import Jobs and Schedules *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC)* and Open Job and Repetitive Schedule Interface *(Oracle Manufacturing Implementation Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10SC Production 16:

Import Jobs and Schedules *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC)*; Open Job and Schedule Interface and Processing Pending Jobs and Schedules *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC Production 16)* for more information.

Step 4: Run Work in Process Value Report (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory) or Application Specialist (Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes (see step instructions)**

Users must log off this application: **No**

In preparation for upgrading to Release 11, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory and work in process transactions, run the WIP Value report for your latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort. In the upgrade finishing steps, you will run more work in process valuation reports and compare your Release 10 and Release 11 work in process balances.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10:
See WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10)* for more information.

To upgrade from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 NCA (10SC):
See WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC)* for more information.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Work in Process, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Work in Process	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Recreate Custom Menus (Conditionally Required)	System Administrator
Category 5: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Work in Process.	
❏ **2.** Verify WIP Parameters	Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)
❏ **3.** Define New Profile Options	Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)
Category 6: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone uses the affected feature of Oracle Work in Process.	
❏ **4.** Activate Move Transaction Manager	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)
❏ **5.** Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)	Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

Step 1: Recreate Custom Menus

Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

You should verify that your custom menu structures point to correct form names. Also, verify that your custom menus do not point to forms that no longer exist.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining a New Menu, *(Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide)*

Category 5 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Work in Process.

Step 2: Verify WIP Parameters
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Work in Process**

You should log on to Oracle Work in Process and verify the system parameters for each organization. Oracle Work in Process seeds the following values in the Release 11 fields:

Parameter	Default Value
Component ATP Rule (ATP parameter)	Null
Default Completion Cost Source (Average Costing parameter)	System Calculated
System Option (Average Costing parameter)	Use Predefined Resources
Cost Type (Average Costing parameter)	Null
Auto Compute Final Completion (Average Costing parameter)	No

Before using Oracle Work in Process, you should verify these values for each organization and update them as necessary.

> **Additional Information:**   Defining WIP Parameters (*Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 3: Define New Profile Options
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Work in Process**

Oracle Work in Process has defined a new profile option for Release 11. You should define this option to meet your business requirements.

TP:WIP:Background Shop Floor Material Processing

Determines how shop floor material transactions are processed. This profile option is predefined as On-line Processing at installation. You can update it at all levels.

> **Additional Information:** Profile Options (*Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11)*

Category 6 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone uses the features of Oracle Work in Process listed on the summary lines below the step titles.

Step 4: Launch Move Transaction Managers
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Work in Process or Oracle Inventory)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Move Transactions**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You should activate the Move Transaction manager that manages the Open Move Interface. You can use the Interface Managers window in Oracle Inventory to do this.

> **Additional Information:** Launching Transaction Managers (*Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 11)*

Step 5: Run WIP Value Report (Recommended)
Perform if upgrading from: **All releases**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Inventory or Oracle Cost Management)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory and Oracle Work in Process**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

After you have completed your Work in Process upgrade, run the Release 11 WIP Value report for the same accounting period and with the same sorts as you used for the Release 10 report. Compare the summary totals for both reports. The period-to-date and cumulative-to-date summaries should tie. If they do not, the difference is most likely due to additional material, resource, or overhead transactions that occurred between the two report runs.

To identify these transactions, move to the new upgrade directory and run the following SQL statement. The script prompts you to enter the date on which you run the report, using the DD-MON-YY HH24:MI:SS format. For example, for a report run on January 20, 1997, at 2:06 PM, you would enter 20-JAN-97 14:06:00.

```
$ cd $WIP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wipurat.sql
```

The script creates a file called wipurat.lst. You must then manually calculate the value of these transactions, add them to the Release 10 WIP Inventory Value report that you ran in the upgrade preparation, and compare this total to the Release 11 WIP Value report. If the reports still do not tie, call Oracle Support Services.

> **Additional Information:**   WIP Value Report *(Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11)*

27

Oracle Workflow

This chapter tells how to prepare Oracle Workflow for an upgrade to the current release of Oracle Applications software. It also lists the steps to perform after you upgrade Oracle Workflow with AutoInstall.

Preparing to Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps that prepare Oracle Workflow for an upgrade, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

Upgrade Preparation Checklist

Oracle Workflow	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 3: You should perform these steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Workflow.	
❏ 1. Update the Protection and Customization Levels of Seeded Item Types	Application Specialist (Oracle Workflow)

Category 3 Steps

You should perform the following steps just before you run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Workflow.

Step 1: Update the Protection and Customization Levels of Seeded Item Types
Performed by: **Application Specialist (Oracle Workflow)**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **Yes**

Users must log off this application: **Yes**

Prior versions of Oracle Workflow included seeded item types. Although the protection level for these item types is set at a level to discourage customizations, you can still change your access level and customize the seeded objects. Such changes, however, may prevent the new seed data in the Release 11 upgrade from loading properly when you use the Workflow Definitions Loader. Therefore, for every item type currently seeded in your database, you can do one of the following:

Action	Result
Do nothing.	Preserves the existing protection and customization levels of the seeded objects and guarantees that any customizations you may have made to the seed data are not overwritten.
Run wfprot.sql for selected seed item types.	Resets the protection level for the selected item type to the value specified and its customization level to zero. The result of this action is that the Release 11 upgrade is guaranteed to load. Note that if you run this script, any prior customizations to the seeded item type will be lost, but any new data that you may have added to the item type will be preserved during the upgrade.
Run wfrmitt.sql for selected seed item types.	Completely deletes the item type and any customizations to the item type from the database, so that the corresponding seed item type in the Release 11 upgrade looks like a new installation.

The wfprot.sql and wfrmitt.sql scripts are located in the sql subdirectory on the software CD under $FND_TOP. They are described in more detail in the Workflow Administration Scripts chapter of the *Oracle Workflow Guide*.

To read more about protection and customization levels and how they affect seed data upgrades using the Workflow Definitions Loader concurrent program, refer to the Overview of Oracle Workflow Access Protection and Using the Workflow Definitions Loader chapters of the *Oracle Workflow Guide*.

After the Upgrade

This section contains a checklist, which summarizes the steps to perform after you have run AutoInstall to upgrade Oracle Workflow, and a detailed description of each step. The steps are organized by category. See the Preface for information on step categories and how to use the checklist.

After Upgrading Checklist

Oracle Workflow	
Steps	**Performed by**
Category 4: Perform the following steps BEFORE anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.	
❏ **1.** Link WFMAILOO (only for InterOffice users)	Technical Specialist

Category 4 Steps

Perform the following steps before anyone logs on to Oracle Applications.

> **Note:**   Perform this step only if Oracle InterOffice is installed.

Step 1: Link WFMAILOO

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual or user's guide needed: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Applications**

Since the adrelink utility does not provide support for conditionally linking a specific WFMAIL variant, Oracle InterOffice users must link WFMAILOO manually.

1.   Use adrelink to link the WFMAILOO executable.

2.   Copy this executable to WFMAIL (since WFMAIL is what is run by the concurrent request).

Index

Y

Z